

**THE FERTILISATION AND RECRUITMENT
DYNAMICS OF SCLERACTINIAN CORALS ON
SOUTH AFRICA'S HIGH-LATITUDE REEFS**

JUSTIN R. HART

Submitted in fulfilment of the academic requirements for the degree of
DOCTOR OF PHILOSOPHY

In the Oceanographic Research Institute of the School of Life Sciences
Faculty of Science and Agriculture
University of KwaZulu-Natal
Durban
December 2018

As the candidate's supervisor I have/have not approved this thesis/dissertation for submission

Signed: _____ Name: _____ Date: _____

Preface

The work described in this thesis was carried out at the Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI), which is an affiliated institute of the School of Biological and Conservation Sciences at the University of KwaZulu-Natal, Westville. Field work was conducted at Sodwana Bay, South Africa from November 2012 - April 2015, under the supervision of Professor Michael Schleyer. This thesis represents original work by the author and has not otherwise been submitted in any form for any degree or diploma to any tertiary institute. Where use has been made of the work of others, it is duly acknowledged in the text.

I certify that the above statement is correct:

Justin R. Hart, December 2018

Prof. Michael H. Schleyer Supervisor; December 2018

Declaration 1 – Plagiarism

I, Justin R. Hart, declare that:

1. The research reported in this thesis, except where otherwise indicated, is my original research.
2. The thesis has not been submitted for any degree or examination at any other university.
3. This thesis does not contain other persons' data, pictures, graphs or other information, unless specifically acknowledged as being sourced from other persons.
4. This thesis does not contain other persons' writing, unless specifically acknowledged as being sourced from other researchers. Where other written sources have been quoted, then:
 - a. Their words have been re-written but the general information attributed to them has been referenced.
 - b. Where their exact words have been used, then their writing has been placed in italics and inside quotation marks, and referenced.
5. This thesis does not contain text, graphics or tables copied and pasted from the internet, unless specifically acknowledged, and the source being detailed in the thesis and in the references sections.

Signed: _____

Justin R. Hart; December 2018

Declaration 2 – Publications

Detail of contribution to publications that form part and/or include research presented in this thesis.

Publication 1 (Published):

JR Hart, MH Schleyer (2016). A novel settlement tile design to facilitate the *in situ* detection of coral recruits. Reef Encounter (31) 2: 43-45.

Author contributions: JH and MS conceived the paper. MS procured financial support for the study, JH wrote the article and MS contributed comments on the manuscript.

Publication 2 (in prep):

JR Hart, MH Schleyer. Fertilisation ecology of *Hydnophora exesa* and *Acropora austra*.

Author contributions: JH and MS conceived the paper. JH collected and analysed the data, MS procured financial support for the study and contributed comments on the manuscript.

Publication 3 (Under review with PLOS ONE):

JR Hart, MH Schleyer. Larval settlement and post-settlement success in *Acropora austra* and *Hydnophora exesa*.

Author contributions: JH and MS conceived the paper. JH collected and analysed the data, MS procured financial support for the study and contributed comments on the manuscript.

Publication 4 (in prep):

JR Hart, MH Schleyer. Recruitment of scleractinian corals on a high-latitude reef in South Africa: Micro-spatial patterns and the effect of caging.

Author contributions: JH and MS conceived the paper. JH collected and analysed the data, MS procured financial support for the study and contributed comments on the manuscript.

Signed: _____

Justin R. Hart; December 2018

1 **Abstract**

2 The production of coral offspring and their survival through early ontogeny to sexual maturity
3 are both vitally important for the persistence of coral-dominated reefs. Understanding factors
4 which affect these processes is important where limited connectivity occurs. This is the case
5 on the high-latitude Two-mile Reef (TMR) at Sodwana Bay in South Africa. A combination of
6 *in situ* and *ex situ* experimental work was conducted, investigating factors which affect the pre-
7 and post-settlement stages of corals. *In vitro* experiments conducted on two representative
8 scleractinian broadcast spawning corals, *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa*, revealed
9 that fertilisation success in both species diminishes significantly with a reduction in sperm
10 concentration and water salinity. Fertilisation success was highest for *A. austera* at 10^6 sperm
11 ml^{-1} ($56.46\% \pm 0.83$, mean \pm SE), and at 10^5 sperm ml^{-1} ($38.76\% \pm 1.29$) for *H. exesa*. At 10^4
12 sperm ml^{-1} there was a significant reduction in fertilisation of 80% and 58% for the respective
13 species. Additionally, fertilisation success of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* decreased significantly
14 by 56% and 79% respectively, when salinity was reduced by 7.06 psu. *Ex situ* settlement
15 experiments were then conducted to assess the settlement of their larvae in response to the
16 presence of two crustose coralline algae (CCA) a *Hydrolithon* sp. and *Mesophyllum* sp. and
17 filtered sea water (FSW) control. Settlement in the presence of *Mesophyllum* was not
18 significantly different from FSW, but a significant trend was observed in the presence of
19 *Hydrolithon*, where settlement of both corals peaked. While *H. exesa* post-settlement success
20 was also greatest in the *Hydrolithon* treatment ($55.00 \pm 10.47\%$), this was not the case for *A.*
21 *austera*, which obtained highest post-settlement success in the *Mesophyllum* treatment (21.67
22 $\pm 7.23\%$). However, these trends were not significant. *Acropora austera* and *H. exesa* were
23 still capable of settlement 69 and 75 days after fertilisation respectively in FSW. In general,
24 more settlement occurred on container surfaces than on CCA fragments. Results from this
25 study suggest that the inducing effect of CCA is coral and CCA taxon-specific, and that *A.*
26 *austera* planulae are more stringent in their settlement requirements.

27

28 *In situ* experiments were conducted by attaching settlement tiles to concrete Y-frames on TMR
29 for six months to assess how coral recruitment differs according to method of settlement tile
30 attachment onto concrete y-frames and how the exclusion of herbivores and predators affects
31 coral recruitment onto tiles. A new, grooved settlement tile was designed to provide refuge

32 microhabitats on the top surface of the tiles. In total, 579 recruits were detected on the
33 settlement tiles, with pocilloporids dominating the recruit composition (64%).

34

35 Grooved tiles were also used to assess whether coral recruit density varied between different
36 microhabitats adjacent to the tile edge (a narrow, 5 mm gap; a wide, 15 mm gap; and tiles raised
37 above the gap). Most recruitment occurred on the vertical edges and towards the edge perimeter
38 of grooved tiles regardless of treatment. The majority of recruitment on the top surface of tiles
39 occurred in the grooves (74.17%). Coral recruit densities differed significantly between the
40 three edge microhabitats, with recruit density significantly less on tiles adjacent to narrow gaps.
41 Raised tiles and tiles with a wide gap had two- and three-fold more recruits (644.33 ± 149.43
42 and 979.29 ± 170.88 recruits m^{-2}) than tiles with a narrow gap (311.05 ± 80.82 recruits m^{-2}).
43 This suggests that the microhabitat associated with the method of tile attachment can have a
44 significant effect on recruitment. Finally, the effect of large herbivores and predators on coral
45 recruitment and the benthic communities was assessed by placing exclusion cages over tiles.
46 Recruit densities had a two-fold reduction when herbivores and predators were excluded.
47 Additionally, CCA cover was also significantly reduced on caged tiles, and the percentage of
48 erect foliose algae, encrusting macroalgae, and turf algae was significantly greater compared
49 to uncaged tiles. This indicates that grazers may assist coral recruitment on TMR.

50

51 This study provided the first assessment of fertilisation success in corals at high-latitude in
52 South Africa and the results are related to information on gene flow and reef resilience. The
53 importance of suitable settlement microhabitats and grazers are also highlighted and stress the
54 need for a multi-faceted management approach to coral conservation. Furthermore, from an
55 experimental point of view, the methodological techniques used to quantify *in situ* recruitment,
56 such as settlement surface design and attachment technique, may have important implications
57 in quantifying recruit densities and settlement preferences. Such differences must be
58 considered when comparing the results of recruit densities in studies using dissimilar
59 techniques.

60

61 **Acknowledgements**

62 The initiation and completion of this dissertation would not have been possible without the
63 help of numerous people for which I am extremely grateful. I would like to thank my
64 supervisor, Professor Michael Schleyer, for his guidance, understanding and persistent support
65 (both professionally and privately). I am extremely grateful to my wife, Lorinda Hart for being
66 a pillar of strength during this journey; both with laboratory sampling which extended into the
67 early hours of the morning during coral spawning and for her support during the write-up of
68 this thesis.

69

70 I am extremely grateful to my host institute, the Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI), a
71 division within the South African Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR), for
72 providing me with the necessary equipment and support to conduct my research. Extended
73 thanks go to both current and past colleagues of the Reef Biodiversity programme at ORI
74 (David Pearton, Camilla Floros, Sean Porter, Stuart Laing, Stephanie Hayman, Phanor
75 Montoya-Maya, Lola Masse and Mathieu Sere), as well as additional SAAMBR staff who
76 assisted with field sampling (Chris Wilkinson, Matt Myhill, Matt Needham, Cameron Wyness,
77 Riaan Boshoff, Rob Kyle and Jason Haxton). Stuart Laing safely skippered the vessel in what
78 proved to be tricky conditions at times in order to get the field work done. Neels Koekemoor,
79 Kerwin Randall and John Ballard provided invaluable technical assistance with the design and
80 manufacture of experimental equipment. Desmond Hayes is thanked for assistance in casting
81 the settlement tiles. David Pearton, Frances Hart, Stephanie Hayman, Maryna Jordaan and Jill
82 Langley provided instrumental assistance with the laboratory work for which I am extremely
83 grateful. Bianca Bellwood and Sean Porter are thanked for editorial and statistical assistance
84 respectively. Collin Ogden of Amoray divers is thanked for cylinder air fills and Dustin Weber
85 of Dropkick Media is thanked for filming corals spawning in the laboratory.

86

87 Funding was provided by the Applied Centre for Climate and Earth System Science (ACCESS)
88 and the South African Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR). The Western
89 Indian Ocean Marine Science Association (WIOMSA) is thanked for funding me to participate
90 in an international conference. iSimangaliso Wetland Park and Ezemvelo KZN Wildlife
91 authorities are thanked for permission to conduct research in a conservation area.

92

93 I would like to thank my parents Vaughan and Frances Hart for instilling a love for the ocean
94 in me and for helping me to fulfil my childhood dream of becoming a marine scientist. I am
95 also eternally grateful to my father- and mother-in-law, Hennie and Marietjie Jordaan, for their
96 support during this time. Furthermore, to the rest of my immediate and extended family, I
97 appreciated your support during this journey. The cups of coffee, meals, baby-sitting, pep talks,
98 and prayers did not go unnoticed.

99

100 **Contents**

101	Preface.....	i
102	Declaration 1 – Plagiarism	ii
103	Declaration 2 – Publications	iii
104	Abstract	1
105	Acknowledgements	3
106	List of Tables	10
107	List of Figures	11
108	Chapter 1: General introduction	15
109	1.1. Persistence of coral reefs in a changing world	15
110	1.2. Coral recruitment	17
111	1.2.1. Gamete production and spawning	19
112	1.2.2. Planktonic life stages – fertilisation, embryogenesis and larval development	21
113	1.2.3. Settlement and post-settlement survival	23
114	1.3. Motivation for this study	27
115	1.4. Study species	28
116	1.4.1. <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> (Pallas, 1766)	29
117	1.4.2. <i>Acropora austera</i> (Dana, 1846)	29
118	1.5. Chapter overviews	30
119	Chapter 2: Global materials and methods	32

120	2.1. Maputaland marginal high-latitude reefs and coastline	32
121	2.2. Spatial structure and management of reefs	33
122	2.3. Currents, upwelling, swells and tides	36
123	2.4. Precipitation and seawater physico-chemical parameters	36
124	2.5. Biodiversity	38
125	2.6. Study reef	38
126	2.7. Collection and husbandry of gravid <i>Acropora austra</i> and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> colonies	
127	for gamete harvesting and <i>ex situ</i> experimental work.....	39
128	Chapter 3: Fertilisation ecology of <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> and <i>Acropora austra</i>	42
129	3.1. Abstract	42
130	3.2. Introduction	42
131	3.2.2. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success	43
132	3.2.3. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success	44
133	3.3. Materials and methods	45
134	3.3.1. Study site and coral gamete collection	45
135	3.3.2. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success	46
136	3.3.3. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success	47
137	3.3.4. Data analysis	47
138	3.4. Results	47
139	3.4.1. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success	47

140	3.4.2. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success	48
141	3.5. Discussion	49
142	3.5.1. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success	49
143	3.5.2. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success	50
144	3.5.3. Conclusion	51
145	3.6. Acknowledgements	52
146	Chapter 4: Larval settlement and post-settlement success in <i>Acropora austera</i> and	
147	<i>Hydnophora exesa</i>	53
148	4.1. Abstract	53
149	4.2. Introduction	54
150	4.3. Materials and methods	56
151	4.3.1. CCA collection and rearing of coral larvae	56
152	4.3.2. Settlement assays	57
153	4.3.3. Data analysis	59
154	4.4. Results	59
155	4.5. Discussion	64
156	4.6. Acknowledgements	68
157	4.7. Supplementary data	69
158	Chapter 5: Recruitment of scleractinian corals on a high-latitude reef in South Africa: Micro-	
159	spatial patterns and the effect of caging	70
160	5.1. Abstract	70

161	5.2. Introduction	71
162	5.2.1. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles	71
163	5.2.2. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion	72
164	5.3. Materials and methods	73
165	5.3.1. Study location and design	73
166	5.3.2. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles	76
167	5.3.3. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion	77
168	5.3.4. Data analysis	80
169	5.4. Results	80
170	5.4.1. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles	80
171	5.4.2. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion	84
172	5.5. Discussion	85
173	5.5.1. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles	85
174	5.5.2. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion	88
175	5.6. Acknowledgements	90
176	5.7. Supplementary data	91
177	Chapter 6: Final discussion and conclusions	93
178	6.1. Research findings	95
179	6.2. Concluding remarks	100
180	References	103

181	Appendix 1: Summary of peer-reviewed publications dealing with coral reproduction within	
182	the south western Indian Ocean.....	135
183	Appendix 2: Summary of peer-reviewed publications dealing with coral recruitment within	
184	the south western Indian Ocean.....	136
185	Appendix 3: A novel settlement tile design to facilitate the <i>in situ</i> detection of coral recruits	
186	.....	137
187	Appendix 4: Representative pre-bleach and post-bleach images of coral recruits from the four	
188	taxonomic categories	140
189		

190

191 **List of Tables**

192

193 **Table 4.1.** Summary of Repeated Measures ANOVA statistics for *Acropora austera* and
 194 *Hydnophora exesa* planulae settlement in *Hydrolithon*, *Mesophyllum* and filtered
 195 seawater controls over 92 days ($n = 6$ wells for each treatment) 50

196

197 **Table 4.2.** Post-settlement success in each treatment at the end of the experiment for *Acropora*
 198 *austera* and *Hydnophora exesa* (98 and 104 DAF
 199 respectively)..... 54

200

201 **Table 5.1.** Proportional coral recruit distribution (%) on the top surface of grooved tiles. The
 202 overall mean is the average percentage of each surface category, regardless of study
 203 site, tile treatment or coral taxa (See Fig. S5.2 for illustrations of each category)
 204 72

205

206 **Table S5.1.** Description of environmental conditions at the three study sites 83

207

208

209 List of Figures

210		
211	Fig. 1.1. Infographic of the top 31 factors reported in the scientific literature to affect the	
212	recovery of corals. Font size illustrates the order of importance from large font to small font,	
213	and the top ten factors are listed in black (adapted from McClanahan et al., 2012)	2
214		
215	Fig. 1.2. <i>Acropora austera</i> (A) and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> (B) colonies on Two-mile reef, Sodwana	
216	Bay	18
217		
218	Fig. 2.1. Global distribution of coral reefs, including marginal reefs. Map comprised of data	
219	from ReefBase (http://www.reefbase.org/gis_maps/datasets.aspx)	20
220		
221	Fig. 2.2. Location of the iSimangaliso Wetland Park on the Maputaland coastline of South	
222	Africa (A), with (B) the spatial separation of the northern, central and southern reef complexes	
223	within the protected area (SLRA = St. Lucia Restricted Area, SLSA = St. Lucia Sanctuary	
224	Area, MRA = Maputaland Restricted Area, MSA = Maputaland Sanctuary Area); and (C) the	
225	location of the prominent reefs within the central complex (TMR = Two-mile Reef, FMR =	
226	Four-mile Reef and NMR = Nine-mile Reef). The three monitoring sites used in this study on	
227	TMR are indicated with solid triangles	22
228		
229	Fig. 2.3. Monthly mean \pm SE (A) rainfall recorded at Mbazwana Airfield ~3 km from Two-	
230	mile Reef (2012-2015) and (B) water temperature recorded at 18m depth on Nine-mile Reef	
231	within the central reef complex at Sodwana Bay during the study period (2011-2016). Rainfall	
232	and seawater temperature data were provided by the South African Weather Service and from	
233	the Oceanographic Research Institute respectively	24
234		
235	Fig. 2.4. <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> sample collected with a corer to determine reproductive status	
236	.....	27
237		
238	Fig. 2.5. Pigmented <i>Acropora austera</i> (A) and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> eggs (B) which indicate that	
239	colonies were gravid and anticipated to spawn after the next full moon	28
240		

241	Fig. 2.6. <i>Acropora austera</i> (A) and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> (B) moments prior to spawning and the	
242	collection of gametes from the water surface (C)	28
243		
244	Fig. 3.1. Mean \pm SE fertilisation success of <i>Acropora austera</i> (A) and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> (B)	
245	at varying sperm concentrations. The same letter above bars indicates no significant difference	
246	at $P < 0.01$ with a Bonferroni adjustment	36
247		
248	Fig. 3.2. Mean \pm SE fertilisation success of <i>Acropora austera</i> (A) and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> (B)	
249	in response to a reduction in water salinity. The same letter above bars indicates no significant	
250	difference at $P < 0.01$ with a Bonferroni adjustment.....	
251	37	
252		
253	Fig. 4.1. Representative images of <i>Acropora austera</i> recruits at termination of the experiment.	
254	(A) <i>Acropora austera</i> recruit on CCA and (B) on the side of a plastic well.....	48
255		
256	Fig. 4.2. Cumulative settlement of coral larvae over time. Mean \pm SE cumulative settlement of	
257	<i>Acropora. austera</i> and <i>Hydnophora. exesa</i> larvae in response to <i>Hydrolithon</i> , <i>Mesophyllum</i>	
258	and filtered seawater treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment)	51
259		
260	Fig. 4.3. Fig. 4.3. Larval outcome throughout the experiment. Mean cumulative contribution	
261	of settled larvae (black bars), unattached larvae (light grey bars), and larval mortality (dark	
262	grey bars) for both coral species in the three treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment)	52
263		
264	Fig. 4.4. Surface settlement preference of coral larvae in response to CCA treatments. Mean \pm	
265	SE cumulative settlement of the original 10 <i>Acropora austera</i> and <i>Hydnophora exesa</i> larvae	
266	added to each well which settled on the container and CCA surfaces in <i>Hydrolithon</i> and	
267	<i>Mesophyllum</i> treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment)	53
268		
269	Fig. S4.1. <i>Acropora austera</i> recruit survival on <i>Mesophyllum</i> and <i>Hydrolithon</i> fragments	
270	.....	59
271		

272	Fig. 5.1. Tile treatments applied in this study (A), and illustration of a concrete Y-frame used	
273	for settlement tile attachment (B). A 10 mm PVC spacer was used to raise settlement tiles out	
274	of the recessed groove on the top surface of Y-frames	64
275		
276	Fig. 5.2. Settlement location categories on the grooved top surface of tiles with representative	
277	images of a coral recruit in each category	66
278		
279	Fig. 5.3. Pilot experiment with replicate clod cards attached within and outside full exclusion	
280	cages (A) and monthly cleaning of cages during the six-month experiment (B)	68
281		
282	Fig. 5.4. Mean \pm SE proportion of coral recruitment in the six tile zones. (n = number of tiles	
283	included in the analyses, i.e. those with at least one recruit)	71
284		
285	Fig. 5.5. Mean \pm SE proportion of coral recruitment in the six tile zones (all treatments	
286	combined) at the different study sites on Two-mile Reef (n = number of tiles with recruits)	
287	.....	71
288		
289	Fig. 5.6. Mean \pm SE recruit density and benthic cover on settlement surfaces used to assess the	
290	effect of edge microhabitat. CCA = crustose coralline algae; EFA = erect foliose algae; EMA	
291	= Encrusting macroalgae; TS = turf and sediment; B = bare substrata; EB = encrusting	
292	bryozoans; OT = other (n = 27 tiles per treatment and per study site)	
293	.....	73
294		
295	Fig. 5.7. Mean \pm SE recruit density and benthic cover on settlement surfaces used to assess the	
296	effect of herbivore and predator exclusion. CCA = crustose coralline algae; EFA = erect foliose	
297	algae; EMA = Encrusting macroalgae; TS = turf and sediment; B = bare substrata; EB =	
298	encrusting bryozoans; OT = other (n = 27 tiles per treatment and per study site)	
299	.....	74
300		
301	Fig. S5.1. Temporary housing of settlement tiles in a flow-through aquarium for three days	
302	during pre-bleaching microscopic analysis	84
303		

304 **Fig. S5.2.** Representation images of a scleractinian coral recruit that was detected during pre-
305 bleaching with fluorescence (A) and a comparative image taken under white light (B)
306 illustrating the benefit of using fluorescence during pre-bleaching 84
307

308 **Chapter 1:**

309 **General introduction**

310 **1.1. Persistence of coral reefs in a changing world**

311 Coral reef ecosystems are the most biodiverse ecosystem in the ocean (Connell, 1978; Veron,
312 1995) which provide an array of ecological goods and services (Cinner, 2014; Moberg and
313 Folke, 1999). Consequently, these ecosystems are of considerable economic value (Costanza
314 et al., 2014) and support the livelihoods of millions of people (Cinner, 2014). The survival of
315 many coral reefs is threatened by the inability of reef-building scleractinian corals to tolerate
316 and recover from local anthropogenic stressors and stressors associated with global climate
317 change (Carpenter et al., 2008; Hoegh-Guldberg, 1999; Hoegh-Guldberg et al., 2007; van
318 Hooidonk et al., 2016; Veron et al., 2009; Wilkinson, 1999). Consequently, a decline in coral
319 abundance (Bruno and Selig, 2007; Gardner et al., 2003), a change in coral community
320 structure (Darling et al., 2013), and a phase-shift in benthic community structure from coral
321 dominance to algal dominance (Roff et al., 2015) has occurred on certain reefs due to the
322 fragility of ecosystem processes which are required for them to survive in a changing world
323 (Mora et al., 2016; Mumby, 2009). However this is not always the case, and coral reefs can
324 recover quite well after disturbance provided key processes, such as recruitment and herbivory
325 remain intact (Gilmour et al., 2013).

326

327 The environmental requirements of coral reefs (e.g. shallow enough for sufficient light), render
328 these ecosystems vulnerable to both local anthropogenic and global climate change stressors
329 which can be additive. The effect of local anthropogenic stressors, which include exploitation,
330 sedimentation and pollution, pre-date the effect of climate change stressors created since the
331 industrial revolution (Pandolfi et al., 2003), and can potentially be controlled with effective
332 local management. Climate change potentially poses the greatest threat to coral reefs and a
333 drastic reduction in global carbon emissions is required to mitigate the effect of stressors, such
334 as ocean warming and acidification, to prevent widespread mortality of corals (Hughes et al.,
335 2017). Since stress levels may differ significantly between coral communities, not all reefs will
336 suffer the same fate (Aronson et al., 2005; van Hooidonk et al., 2016) and it is believed that
337 deeper reefs could be potential refuge areas. However, although less susceptible than shallow

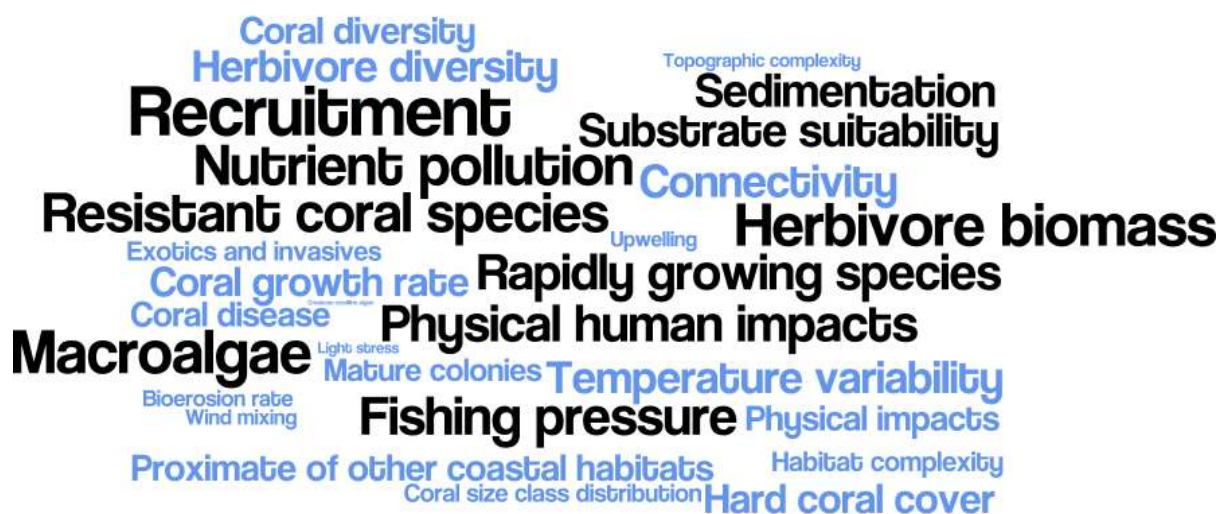
338 environments, these too can be compromised by climate change (Frade et al., 2018) and the
339 protection of both deep and shallow reefs is advised (Bridge et al., 2013).

340

341 The ability of coral-dominated ecosystems to persist through disturbance events is dependent
342 on their resilience, which is defined by Hughes et al. (2010) as their “capacity to absorb
343 recurrent disturbances or shocks and adapt to change without fundamentally switching to an
344 alternative stable state”. Two key components of resilience are resistance (the ability of an
345 ecological community to resist or survive a disturbance) and recovery (the rate a community
346 takes to return to its original condition) (Côté and Darling, 2010; West and Salm, 2003). Key
347 components of resistance include the presence of stress-resistant corals and symbionts, and the
348 occurrence of high annual temperature variability on a given reef, which can promote coral
349 tolerance to irregular temperatures (McClanahan et al., 2012). An understanding of local
350 environmental conditions and the early life stages of corals is imperative for effective reef
351 management (Ritson-Williams et al., 2009) as high-latitude coral communities are commonly
352 isolated (Montoya-Maya et al., 2016; Noreen et al., 2009), which could result in them being
353 slower to recover from disturbance (Fellegrà et al., 2013). Furthermore early life stages of
354 corals are more sensitive to environmental stressors in comparison to other life stages (Hedouin
355 et al., 2015).

356

357 Coral recruitment (defined here as the introduction of new corals into the population) has been
358 identified as a vital factor in coral recovery (Colgan, 1987; Edmunds and Carpenter, 2001;
359 McClanahan et al., 2012; Mumby and Harborne, 2010) and a key structuring process in coral
360 communities (Connell et al., 1997; Harrison and Wallace, 1990; Hughes and Jackson, 1985;
361 Richmond, 1997). Consequently, an understanding of factors which affect coral recruitment is
362 essential for their effective management and to envisage how they may respond to future
363 environmental changes (Guest et al., 2008; Hughes et al., 1999; Hughes et al., 2003),
364 particularly in terms of coral reef resilience (e.g. Adjeroud et al., 2009; Hughes and Tanner,
365 2000). However, studies pertaining to the ecological processes involved in coral recruitment
366 have at large been restricted to tropical locations near research stations (see review by Baird et
367 al., 2009) with comparatively fewer studies originating from high-latitude reefs.



368

369 **Fig. 1.1.** Infographic of the top 31 factors reported in the scientific literature to affect the
 370 recovery of corals. Font size illustrates the order of importance from large font to small font,
 371 and the top ten factors are listed in black (adapted from McClanahan et al., 2012).

372

373 **1.2. Coral recruitment**

374 Coral recruitment occurs by either asexual or sexual reproduction (Harrison and Wallace, 1990;
 375 Richmond, 1997). Asexual reproduction of corals may occur by means of polyp bail-out
 376 (Sammarco, 1982), colony fragmentation (Foster et al., 2013; Highsmith, 1982) and
 377 parthenogenesis (Ayre and Resing, 1986; Stoddart, 1983). All of these facilitate reproduction
 378 without the involvement of another colony, but do not add genetic variability to the population
 379 as offspring contain the same genetic makeup as their parent colony (Harrison, 2011).
 380 Consequently asexual reproduction only prolongs the continued existence of a parental
 381 genotype. In contrast, sexual reproduction promotes genetic diversity which is essential for
 382 adaptation to a changing environment (van Woesik, 2010) and plays a central role in the
 383 speciation of corals (Veron, 1995). Despite these differences, both modes of reproduction can
 384 be used in coral restoration techniques to assist coral recovery (Boch and Morse, 2012;
 385 Chamberland et al., 2017; Guest et al., 2013; Rinkevich, 1995; Rinkevich, 2014).

386

387 Recruitment of corals by means of sexual reproduction is dependent on the production and
 388 release of gametes, egg fertilisation, embryonic and larval development, and larval settlement

389 followed by post-settlement survival (Ritson-Williams et al., 2009). Sexual maturity of
390 broadcast spawners is reached after 3-5 years (Babcock, 1991; Baria et al., 2012; Chamberland
391 et al., 2016). The early life stages of corals are particularly vulnerable to high levels of mortality
392 and propagules need to proceed through a ‘gauntlet’ of barriers which might be encountered
393 during each life stage in order to become successful recruits (Arnold et al., 2010; Chong-Seng
394 et al., 2014).

395

396 Corals employ a remarkable diversity of sexual reproductive strategies which can be
397 differentiated into two sexual systems (hermaphroditism and gonochorism) and reproductive
398 modes (spawning and brooding). The result is four patterns of sexual reproduction into which
399 the majority of scleractinian corals can be categorized: hermaphroditic spawners,
400 hermaphroditic brooders, gonochoric spawners and gonochoric brooders (Harrison, 2011).
401 However, although not common, protandry (Loya and Sakai, 2008), bi-directional sex changes
402 (Loya and Sakai, 2008) and even pseudo-gynodioecy have been recorded in corals (Harrison,
403 1988; Keshavmurthy et al., 2012). Taxonomic patterns of corals have shown that sexual
404 systems are fairly fixed, while reproductive modes are somewhat plastic (Baird et al., 2009).
405 For example, *Pocillopora verrucosa* is a brooder in the Philippines (Villanueva et al., 2008),
406 but a broadcast spawner in Japan (Kinzie III, 1993), South Africa (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998;
407 Massé et al., 2012; Séré et al., 2010) and in the Red Sea (Bouwmeester et al., 2011). In more
408 unique cases, corals can brood and broadcast spawn at one particular location (Ward, 1992).

409

410 The manner in which corals sexually reproduce can play a role in the spatio-temporal
411 distribution, composition and abundance of their recruits (Harrison and Wallace, 1990).
412 Simultaneous hermaphroditic broadcast spawning (hereafter referred to as broadcast spawning)
413 is the dominant reproductive pattern among scleractinian corals (87.6% of 404 scleractinians
414 reported in Harrison, 2011). For the purposes of this study, aspects involved in broadcast
415 spawning will be the focus of further discussion, as this is the reproductive strategy used by
416 the majority of scleractinian corals studied to date (Baird et al., 2009; Harrison, 2011),
417 including all scleractinians studied on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa (Kruger and
418 Schleyer, 1998; Massé, 2014; Massé et al., 2013), and the two focal taxa used in this study
419 (Chapter 3 and Chapter 4). For details pertaining to brooding in corals see Harrison and Wallace
420 (1990).

421

422 *1.2.1. Gamete production and spawning*

423 Broadcast spawners typically have a single annual reproductive season, which involves a six-
424 to fourteen-month oogenic cycle that occurs in temporary gonads located in mesenteries (Baird
425 et al., 2009; Harrison and Wallace, 1990; Veron, 1995). However, some corals may exhibit bi-
426 annual spawning (e.g. Gilmour et al., 2009; Guest et al., 2004; Mangubhai and Harrison, 2008).
427 The investment in the production of coral gametes is dependent on the availability of stem
428 cells, which are traded away from growth and tissue repair to produce gametes (Rinkevich,
429 1996). The fecundity of coral colonies is dependent on the reproductive output per polyp and
430 the number of reproductively active polyps (Hall and Hughes, 1996). Gamete production can
431 vary spatially within colonies, usually being greater in central polyps compared to the colony
432 edges (Chornesky and Peters, 1987; Wallace, 1985), but there are exceptions to the rule
433 (Nozawa and Lin, 2014). Additionally, not all colonies necessarily partake in a reproductive
434 season (Babcock et al., 1994), consequently fecundity can differ significantly between
435 conspecifics (Sier and Olive, 1994). Corals in areas with greater coral cover have been shown
436 to produce more larvae per square centimeter than corals occupying less dense populations
437 (Hartmann et al., 2018). Environmental conditions have a significant effect on coral fecundity.
438 Stressors such as salinity (Jokiel, 1985), nutrients (Cox and Ward, 2002; Ward and Harrison,
439 2000), sedimentation, water turbidity (Jones et al., 2015; Kojis and Quinn, 1984; Tomascik and
440 Sander, 1987), coral bleaching (Baird and Marshall, 2002), and colony fragmentation (Zakai
441 et al., 2000) have all been shown to significantly reduce fecundity. Reabsorption of eggs may
442 occur if a coral becomes stressed during gametogenesis (Okubo et al., 2005; Okubo et al., 2009;
443 St Gelais et al., 2016a), or if they are not released during spawning (Sier and Olive, 1994).

444

445 Simultaneous hermaphroditic broadcast spawners typically package eggs and sperm from a
446 reproductively active polyp together into positively buoyant egg-sperm bundles, which are
447 synchronously released by polyps and conspecifics annually on a select few nights at a
448 particular location, thereby enabling cross-fertilisation (Harrison, 2011). The reproductive
449 effort of coral polyps (size or biomass of gametes produced) can differ significantly between
450 coral taxa (Harriott, 1983), with as many as 180 eggs found in a single egg-sperm bundle
451 (Richmond, 1997). A significant portion of eggs are comprised of lipids, which provide
452 buoyancy to egg-sperm bundles and energy for embryonic and larval development (Arai et al.,
453 1993; Harii et al., 2007).

454

455 Multi-species synchronised spawning is characteristic of most species-rich coral assemblages
456 (e.g. Babcock et al., 1986; Bouwmeester et al., 2014; Guest et al., 2005; Penland et al., 2004;
457 Sola et al., 2016) and results in the formation of spawn slicks comprising gametes from all
458 corals which spawned synchronously. In spite of 30 years of research, the identification of
459 broad-scale cues that initiate spawning events remains contentious (see Keith et al., 2016), but
460 the resulting spawning time is believed to coincide with optimal environmental conditions
461 (Foster et al., 2018; Richmond, 1997). Annual spawning events of different coral taxa are
462 predictable at specific sites, but can differ significantly between locations (Keith et al., 2016;
463 Sorek and Levy, 2014), presumably due to adaptations to particular cues and local
464 environmental conditions (Richmond and Hunter, 1990). Environmental cues are believed to
465 work at progressively finer scales, with water temperature (Keith et al., 2016), lunar cycle
466 (Sweeney et al., 2011), and solar light cycles (Brady et al., 2009) believed to be key parameters
467 which enable conspecifics at a particular location to synchronise gamete release during the
468 same month, day and hour. Aside from water temperature, other environmental parameters
469 such as rainfall (Mendes and Woodley, 2002), wind (van Woesik, 2010), and solar insolation
470 (van Woesik et al., 2006) have been investigated as broad-scale spawning cues and correlated
471 to the month in which corals spawn. However, these parameters are often only assessed in
472 isolation, at a limited geographic scale and replicate years, thereby making it difficult to
473 determine their relative importance. In contrast, the effect that lunar and solar cycles have in
474 determining the day and time of spawning after sunset, respectively, is less contentious due to
475 definitive experimental studies (Jokiel et al., 1985). Cryptochromes enable corals to detect
476 changes in light that occurs during lunar cycles, resulting in the majority of corals spawning
477 between dusk and midnight on a specific day following the full moon, and in some instances,
478 the new moon. Only a few coral taxa have been documented spawning during the day (e.g.
479 Bouwmeester et al., 2011; Bronstein and Loya, 2011; Harii et al., 2001; Muller and Vermeij,
480 2011). Experimental work has shown that increased hormone levels occur in the surrounding
481 water during spawning, providing a possible chemical cue for conspecifics to spawn (Atkinson
482 and Atkinson, 1992; Twan et al., 2006).

483

484 Records from the south western Indian Ocean report coral spawning at Vamizi Island, northern
485 Mozambique, between September and December (Sola et al., 2016). Additionally, inferred
486 spawning has been recorded during March in the Maldives (Sier and Olive, 1994) and *Acropora*
487 species were observed spawning in October at Zanzibar (Franklin et al., 1998), and November

488 in Mauritius (Munbodh et al., 1999). *Fungia danai* corals have been observed spawning during
489 February in the Chagos Archipelago (Mangubhai et al., 2007a). *Acropora* spawning was
490 observed during September in Madagascar (Gress et al., 2014) and during November at
491 Reunion (Massé, 2014). In the north western Indian Ocean, spawning occurs progressively
492 later in the year as reef latitudes increase, with low latitudes experiencing spawning from
493 January to March, mid-latitudes from March to May, and high latitudes from June to September
494 (Howells et al., 2014). However, a latitudinal trend is not evident in the south western Indian
495 Ocean based on present records. For details pertaining to coral reproduction in South Africa
496 see Appendix 1.

497

498 1.2.2. Planktonic life stages – fertilisation, embryogenesis and larval development

499 Following release, egg-sperm bundles float to the water surface where they dissociate and eggs
500 emit attractants which stimulate sperm motility, and fertilisation occurs (Morita et al., 2006).
501 The positive buoyancy of eggs and an abundance of sperm at the water surface enhances the
502 likelihood of fertilisation as gamete concentration from synchronously spawned conspecifics
503 is maximized at the two-dimensional water surface (Moláček et al., 2012). The temporal
504 overlap between viable gametes released from multi-specific spawning events can result in
505 hybridization between certain corals (Fogarty, 2012; Fogarty et al., 2012; Willis et al., 1997).
506 Fertilisation success can differ significantly between genotypic crosses (Baums et al., 2013),
507 and typically peaks within the first three hours of spawning (Babcock and Heyward, 1986;
508 Chui et al., 2014), after which gamete dilution can result in a significant reduction in
509 fertilisation (Chui et al., 2014; Oliver and Babcock, 1992).

510

511 Coral fertilisation success can be affected by a parent colony's pre-spawning condition (e.g.
512 bleaching of parent colonies prior to spawning can compromise sperm motility (Omori et al.,
513 2001). Furthermore the quality of gametes may differ significantly between the nights of
514 spawning (Chui et al., 2014; Hedouin and Gates, 2013). Environmental and biological
515 conditions experienced during coral spawning and embryogenesis are pivotal to reproductive
516 success as positively buoyant eggs and fertilised embryos are 'naked', passive particles at the
517 mercy of conditions at the water surface prior to developing into actively swimming larvae
518 (Heyward and Negri, 2012). Success of the pelagic life stages of corals can be compromised
519 by increased water temperature (Albright and Mason, 2013; Bassim and Sammarco, 2003;
520 Chua et al., 2013b; Edmunds et al., 2001; Negri et al., 2007; Randall and Szmant, 2009), pH,

521 (Albright and Mason, 2013; Chua et al., 2013a; Iguchi et al., 2015), salinity (Hedouin et al.,
522 2015; Scott et al., 2013; Vermeij et al., 2006), irradiance (Gleason et al., 2006), turbulence
523 (Heyward and Negri, 2012; Jiang et al., 2015) and pollutants such as oils (Mercurio et al.,
524 2004), eutrophication (Lam et al., 2015) and herbicides (Negri et al., 2005). For a review of the
525 effect of seawater properties on coral fertilisation and the early larval stages see Woods et al.
526 (2014).

527

528 The high-latitude reefs of South Africa are typically deeper than tropical reefs and experience
529 greater turbulence at the surface (Schleyer and Tomalin, 2000). This could result in more rapid
530 gamete dilution. Additionally, previous studies have shown that spawning on Maputaland reefs
531 occur during the summer months when peak rainfall is experienced (Kruger and Schleyer,
532 1998; Massé, 2014). It is predicted that the increased frequency and intensity of rainfall events
533 associated with climate change, could negatively influence fertilisation success through gamete
534 dilution (Hedouin et al., 2015; Oliver and Babcock, 1992) and the creation of hyposaline
535 conditions on the water surface (Scott et al., 2013).

536

537 Fertilisation between conspecific genotypes introduces genetic recombination (which is
538 beneficial in changing environments). However, some coral communities cope with low
539 concentrations of conspecific sperm for by self-fertilisation which has ramifications on the
540 genetic structure of coral communities (Shearer et al., 2009). Fertilisation. Barriers do exist to
541 prevent self-fertilisation. For example eggs are only capable of being fertilised after a certain
542 time period (Heyward and Babcock, 1986; Oliver and Babcock, 1992), resulting in low or non-
543 existent levels of self-fertilisation success (Fogarty et al., 2012; Heyward and Babcock, 1986;
544 Knowlton et al., 1997). However, these barriers may break down over time (Heyward and
545 Babcock, 1986). Some corals are capable of self-fertilisation (Bassim et al., 2002; Heyward
546 and Babcock, 1986) and while it is not generally desirable, it can be important for some species,
547 particularly brooders (Brazeau et al., 1998; Gleason et al., 2001). Additionally it has been
548 hypothesized that it is beneficial on geographically isolated reefs where the availability of
549 conspecific gametes is low (Bachtiar, 2001; Bassim et al., 2002). However, where fewer
550 colonies are present, more rapid gamete dilution may occur, limiting fertilisation success in
551 general (Levitan et al., 2004; Oliver and Babcock, 1992).

552

553 The free gametes and early embryonic stage of corals are susceptible to high mortality as they
554 constitute a nutritious food source for planktivorous fish (McCormick, 2003; Pratchett et al.,
555 2001; Westneat and Resing, 1988) and are even preyed upon by other mature corals (Fabricius
556 and Metzner, 2004). Fish predation can lead to a 20-36% reduction in the supply of coral
557 propagules (Pratchett et al., 2001). Indeed, whale shark aggregations have been associated with
558 spawning events (Taylor, 1996). However, predation levels vary between coral species as their
559 propagules' palatability differs (Pratchett et al., 2000). In addition, microbial infections can
560 cause planular mortality, which can be indirectly enhanced by macroalgae that increase
561 microbial loads or enhance coral susceptibility to infection (Vermeij et al., 2009). Eggs which
562 are successfully fertilised and have survived this gauntlet mature into embryos which proceed
563 through morula, blastula, and gastrula stages, with completion of embryogenesis marked by
564 the formation of a ciliated, actively swimming planula (Ball et al., 2002).

565

566 The period during which larvae are able to settle and metamorphose (i.e. competency period)
567 differs according to reproductive mode employed and coral taxa (Babcock and Heyward, 1986;
568 Szmant and Meadows, 2006; Tay et al., 2011). Brooded larvae are competent to settle
569 immediately after release and are capable of an extended larval duration as they obtain
570 zooxanthellae from parents (Harrison and Wallace, 1990). Broadcast spawners have a pre-
571 competency period, generally do not receive zooxanthellae from their parent colony and
572 typically survive for a shorter duration when compared with brooders (Harrison and Wallace,
573 1990). These planulae are thus aposymbiotic (Strader et al., 2015) and only appear to acquire
574 zooxanthellae once they settle and metamorphose (Yamashita et al., 2014). Brooded planulae
575 are able to settle after release within centimetres of parent colonies, whereas planulae from
576 broadcast spawners require a developmental period within the water column to reach settlement
577 competency (Richmond, 1997). This developmental period can vary between taxa and can
578 occur as soon as 1-2 days after spawning (Nozawa and Harrison, 2005). Although coral
579 planulae from broadcast spawners have the potential for large-scale dispersal, they tend to settle
580 a lot closer to their natal colony than was originally thought (Miller and Mundy, 2003).

581

582 *1.2.3. Settlement and post-settlement survival*

583 Coral larvae need to attach to an appropriate substratum, metamorphose into a primary polyp,
584 grow by asexual budding, and survive to sexual maturity to become a successful colony which
585 contributes to future generations. Settlement involves the physical adhesion of planulae by

586 mucus threads (Abelson et al., 1994), flattening of the posterior half of the larva, and deposition
587 of a calcium carbonate exoskeleton during metamorphosis, thereby forming a coral spat. The
588 skeleton deposited after metamorphosis provides a record that settlement occurred and can be
589 used to identify a spat (Babcock et al., 2003; Grasso et al., 2011). The settlement of coral larvae
590 is dependent on both environmental conditions and the response of coral larvae to cues that are
591 effective over short or long distances and vary in magnitude and importance (Gleason and
592 Hofmann, 2011; Jackson, 1991; Maida et al., 1994). Selectivity can differ significantly between
593 coral taxa, which in turn influences a species' role in early successional settlement (Baird and
594 Morse, 2004). Larvae with different fluorescent colours have been found to respond differently
595 to settlement cues (Kenkel et al., 2011). The buoyancy of coral larvae changes from positive
596 to negative as they develop (Szmant and Meadows, 2006; Tay et al., 2011). Combined with
597 local hydrodynamics, this plays an important role in the direction and distance of coral larvae
598 dispersal, and the supply of larvae to a particular site (Gleason and Hofmann, 2011). Coral
599 larvae are weak swimmers (Chia et al., 1984) and their swimming ability is usually not
600 sufficient to overcome local flow so that, although settlement-inducing cues may be present,
601 larvae may not necessarily be able to respond to them due to hydrodynamics that prevent this
602 (Hata et al., 2017). Hydrodynamics also have a significant effect on the ability of coral planulae
603 to adhere to the substratum (Abelson et al., 1994).

604

605 Settlement of coral larvae can be a highly selective process and can influence their depth
606 distribution (Baird et al., 2003), but microhabitat selectivity is not always evident (Baird and
607 Morse, 2004; Erwin and Szmant, 2010). For example, it has been suggested that more common
608 coral species show less preference for settlement surface textures (Carleton and Sammarco,
609 1987). Coral larvae are capable of detecting and responding to reef sound (Vermeij et al., 2010),
610 barometric pressure (Stake and Sammarco, 2003), light (Levy et al., 2007; Mundy and
611 Babcock, 1998a), substratum colour (Mason et al., 2011), chemical cues (Heyward and Negri,
612 1999), substratum orientation (vertical vs horizontal), and surface micro-structure (Carleton
613 and Sammarco, 1987), which can influence settlement and post-settlement survival of corals.
614 Higher levels of settlement occur in cracks and crevices (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016;
615 Doropoulos et al., 2016; Nozawa, 2008; Whalan et al., 2015). As a result, surface
616 microstructure has been considered in the design of settlement surfaces to assess the
617 settlement of coral larvae in laboratory (Petersen et al., 2004; Tebben et al., 2014; Whalan

618 et al., 2015) and field studies (Hart and Schleyer, 2016; Nozawa et al., 2011; Roeroe et al.,
619 2013).

620

621 The importance of waterborne chemical cues has been highlighted in a study which shows
622 varying settlement in response to water chemistry from one meter above degraded, algae-
623 dominated, and pristine reefs (Gleason et al., 2009). A chemical's solubility in seawater and
624 dilution within prevailing currents will determine the distance over which it can act (Gleason
625 and Hofmann, 2011). Long distance cues become increasingly important when attracting coral
626 settlement to degraded reefs in particular (Gleason and Hofmann, 2011). Insoluble chemicals
627 trigger settlement choices at the point of surface contact or within a few centimetres above it,
628 and are important triggers for permanent attachment and larval metamorphosis (Gleason and
629 Hofmann, 2011). Indeed, the power of this relationship has been demonstrated in crustose
630 coralline algae (CCA) which have strong settlement-inducing effects on coral larvae (Heyward
631 and Negri, 1999; Morse et al., 1996; Morse et al., 1988). Yet, the exact chemical cues which
632 trigger these responses remain undetermined and are probably a combination of various
633 triggers acting together (Gleason and Hofmann, 2011). The importance of CCA as a settlement-
634 inducing cue is species-specific and depends on both the coral and CCA species (Harrington,
635 2004). Indeed, some corals do not require settlement-inducing cues from CCA or microbes and
636 settle readily on inert surfaces (Baird and Morse, 2004; Erwin and Szmant, 2010). In addition
637 to CCA chemical cues, bacterial biofilms on their surfaces and the surrounding substrata may
638 also induce coral settlement (Erwin et al., 2008; Negri et al., 2001). The importance of these
639 biofilms is now well established (Patterson et al., 2016; Webster et al., 2004) and they may
640 either act alone or in conjunction with chemical cues (Negri et al., 2001; Webster et al., 2004).
641 Biofilm composition fluctuates with substratum orientation, time and water depth (Erwin et al.,
642 2008; Golbuu and Richmond, 2007; Webster et al., 2004). In contrast, some biota release
643 chemicals which have an allelopathic effect, thereby inhibiting settlement, e.g. some soft corals
644 (Maida et al., 1995), macroalgae (Baird and Morse, 2004; Birrell et al., 2008b; Diaz-Pulido et
645 al., 2010; Kuffner et al., 2006) and the cyanobacteria *Lyngbya majuscula* (Kuffner and Paul,
646 2004; Kuffner et al., 2006).

647

648 Surfaces suitable for coral settlement and post-settlement survival are often limiting on reefs.

649 The substrata on coral reefs are usually occupied by biota which can out-compete recruits or
650 comprise ephemeral surfaces which can result in dislodgement of the recruits (Nugues and

651 Szmant, 2006). The benthic cover can differ according to the successional stage on the reef
652 (Smith et al., 2010) and the herbivores present, as grazing regulates macroalgal growth
653 (Burkpile and Hay, 2010; Edmunds and Carpenter, 2001; Hughes et al., 2007). This reduces
654 the risk of overgrowing and smothering of new recruits, which is particularly important in
655 nutrient-rich environments where contending biota often flourish (Birkeland, 1977).
656 Macroalgae further inhibit coral recruitment by releasing chemicals which interrupt or inhibit
657 settlement or increase coral larvae mortality (Birrell et al., 2005). Additionally, macroalgae
658 indirectly affect settlement by housing microbes that can infect coral larvae (Vermeij et al.,
659 2009). Indeed, the majority of studies report negative effects of macroalgae on coral settlement,
660 (Baird and Morse, 2004; Birrell et al., 2008a; Diaz-Pulido et al., 2010; Kuffner et al., 2006),
661 yet chemicals released by the macroalga *Lobophora variegata* have been shown to positively
662 influence *Acropora millepora* settlement, despite its general negative effect on other coral
663 species (Birrell et al., 2008b). Although coral larvae may successfully settle on ephemeral
664 surfaces such as macro- and turf algae (Birrell et al., 2005; Kuffner et al., 2006; Nugues and
665 Szmant, 2006), some species of CCA exhibit epithelial sloughing (Harrington et al., 2004)
666 which inevitably results in recruit dislodgment and mortality. Turf algae also indirectly
667 decrease settlement by trapping sediment which is unfavourable for settlement (Babcock and
668 Davies, 1991; Babcock and Mundy, 1996; Hunte and Wittenberg, 1992).

669
670 Although understudied, there is evidence of plasticity whereby recently settled *Pocillopora*
671 *damicornis* (Richmond, 1985) and *Acropora tenuis* (Kariyazono and Hatta, 2015) propagules
672 are capable of ejecting from their skeletons (polyp bail-out), thereby reverting back to a
673 planktonic phase. *Pocillopora damicornis* is capable of resettling elsewhere (Richmond, 1985),
674 but resettling was not observed in the study on *A. tenuis* (Kariyazono and Hatta, 2015). Post-
675 settlement mortality of coral juveniles is usually extremely high (Babcock, 1985; Fairfull and
676 Harriott, 1999; Rylaarsdam, 1983; Smith, 1992; Szmant and Miller, 2006; Vermeij and Sandin,
677 2008), within both short (the first 24 hours (Martinez and Abelson, 2013) and long periods
678 (weeks) following settlement (Penin et al., 2010). As recruit size increases, post-settlement
679 mortality declines (Doropoulos et al., 2015; Raymundo and Maypa, 2004) and this is
680 independent of the species of coral which may exhibit dissimilar post-settlement growth rates
681 (Babcock, 1985; Doropoulos et al., 2015; Rylaarsdam, 1983). Aggregated settlement of coral
682 planulae may be a strategy which results in recruits reaching their size-escape threshold faster.
683 Factors which limit post-settlement growth rates such as ocean acidification can further

684 exacerbate post-settlement bottlenecks (Doropoulos et al., 2012a). New coral recruits are
685 generally weaker competitors compared to more mature individuals (Vermeij and Sandin,
686 2008) and may incur predation from a variety of sources, including fireworms (Wolf and
687 Nugues, 2012), and face competitive challenges from macroalgae (McCook et al., 2001) and
688 some species of CCA (Dunstan and Johnson, 1998; Maida et al., 1994), to name a few.
689 Settlement within grooves, such as those caused by grazing echinoderms (Birkeland and
690 Randall, 1981; Sammarco, 1980), can facilitate post-settlement survival by offering
691 protection from predation (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016; Brock, 1979; Doropoulos et al.,
692 2016). This facilitating role may differ between herbivore guilds, whereby both herbivorous
693 fish and urchins create free space, but urchins may also cause significantly higher levels of
694 post-settlement mortality when their densities are high due to ‘accidental’ recruit mortality
695 during grazing (O’Leary et al., 2013). Intermediate levels of grazing may thus be preferred for
696 optimal settlement (Sammarco and Carleton, 1981) as algal cover is reduced and refuges for
697 settlement are formed (Birkeland and Randall, 1981; Mumby et al., 2007).

698

699 **1.3. Motivation for this study**

700 While assessments associated with the early life stages of corals date back to the early 1900s
701 (see references in Fadlallah, 1983), published studies investigating the reproduction and
702 recruitment of corals within the south western Indian Ocean (SWIO), remain scant compared
703 to other locations. Marginal, high-latitude reefs, such as those situated along the Maputaland
704 coastline of South Africa, constitute unique ‘model’ systems as they occur in sub-optimal
705 environmental conditions compared to those typically associated with tropical coral reefs
706 (Kleypas et al., 1999; Perry, 2003). Nonetheless, they are considered to be potentially important
707 refuges for climate-sensitive reef species (Beger et al., 2014; Greenstein and Pandolfi, 2008;
708 Perry, 2003). South African coral communities, which are of great economic (Laing, 2013) and
709 biological importance (Floros and Schleyer, 2017; Schleyer and Celliers, 2003), are less likely
710 to experience coral bleaching caused by elevated sea surface temperature due to their depth
711 and supply of cool upwelling water (Riegl, 2003). All reefs are dependent on coral reproduction
712 and recruitment, amongst other factors to ensure their perpetuation. However, coral
713 reproduction and recruitment have been shown to diminish at some high-latitude reef (Hughes
714 et al., 2002), thereby highlighting the importance of investigating the dynamics at such
715 locations.

716

717 A summary of peer-reviewed articles which have considered coral reproduction and
718 recruitment in the SWIO is provided in Appendices 1 and 2. Reproductive studies have
719 predominantly been confined to assessments of reproductive seasonality, fecundity and
720 documentation of the coral spawning period (Appendix 1). Aspects associated with the early
721 life stages of corals (fertilisation until settlement) are yet to be investigated in the SWIO.
722 Furthermore little effort has been made to assess how ecological processes, such as herbivory,
723 affect the benthic community, settlement and early life stages of corals on marginal, high-
724 latitude reefs. This thesis thus addresses these parameters and aims to advance the limited
725 knowledge of how they affect the early life stages of scleractinian corals at their southern
726 distributional limit on the East African coast by assessing the following:

727

- 728 1. Do sperm concentration and salinity affect the fertilisation success of representative the
729 corals, *A. austera* and *H. exesa*?
- 730 2. Does the presence of *Hydrolithon* sp. and *Mesophyllum* cf *funafutiense* crustose
731 coralline algae affect the settlement and post-settlement survival of *A. austera* and *H.*
732 *exesa* planulae?
- 733 3. Do coral recruitment and benthic community differ on the substratum according to
734 surface microhabitat?
- 735 4. Does the exclusion of herbivores and predators have an effect on coral recruitment and
736 benthic community structure?

737

738 **1.4. Study species**

739 Assessments of reproductive or early ontogeny dynamics of Scleractinia on the high-latitude
740 reefs in South Africa are currently limited. *Hydnophora exesa* and *Acropora austera* were
741 selected for this study, being considered representative species that are relatively abundant on
742 the high-latitude reefs in South Africa. They have differing life history strategies which may
743 endow them with different adaptive capacity (Obura, 2001) and there is a current lack of
744 knowledge globally regarding the reproduction and early life stages of these two coral taxa.
745 Furthermore, the identification of the annual timing of spawning of *H. exesa*, along with spot
746 assessments of *A. austera*, enabled the early ontogeny of these two species to be investigated
747 (Chapters 3 and 4).

748

749 1.4.1. *Hydnophora exesa* (Pallas, 1766)

750 *Hydnophora exesa* is a common scleractinian coral which occurs on protected slopes and in
751 lagoons in the Indian, Pacific and Atlantic Oceans (Sheppard et al., 2014; Veron, 2000). While
752 colonies may be submassive, encrusting, laminar or sub-arborescent depending on location,
753 they are only encrusting on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa (Hart pers. obs.). It is the
754 third highest in relative abundance (14.6%) on the upper fore-reef of Two-mile Reef, but
755 becomes less common on the fore-reef, reef flat, and pinnacles respectively (Celliers, 2001).
756 There is scant information on the reproductive dynamics of the genus *Hydnophora*.
757 *Hydnophora exesa* has been observed to be a hermaphroditic broadcast spawner on the Great
758 Barrier Reef, where it has been observed to spawn 1:55 hr after sunset on the 6th, 7th, and 8th
759 night after full moon (NAFM) at Magnetic Island (Babcock et al., 1986) and 1:44 hr after sunset
760 on the 5th NAFM, on reefs surrounding Orpheus and Pelorus Islands (Baird, 2001). In addition,
761 *Hydnophora rigida* has been observed to spawn 3-6 NAFM at Lizard Island (Babcock et al.,
762 1986). Elsewhere, Bachtiar (2001) showed that *Hydnophora rigida* is a simultaneous
763 hermaphroditic broadcast spawner in Indonesia, with spawning predicted to occur after the
764 November full moon based on the disappearance of mature eggs in December. Tagged colonies
765 which spawned in November were found to contain gametes again two months later, indicating
766 that this species may undergo more than one gametogenic cycle in a year (Bachtiar, 2001), or
767 that their gametogenic cycle may last 10 months.

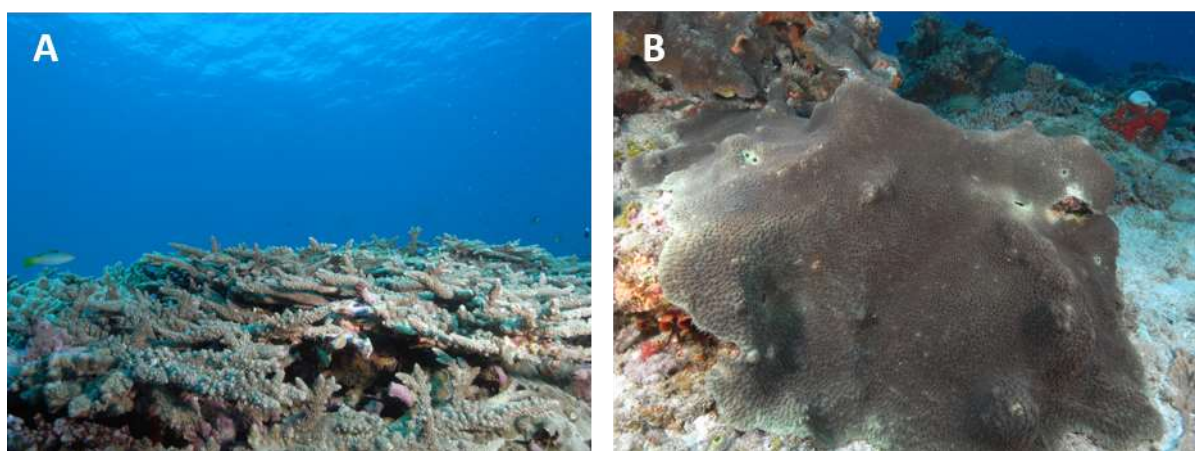
768

769 1.4.2. *Acropora austera* (Dana, 1846)

770 *Acropora austera* is found in the Indian and Pacific Oceans, ranging from the Red Sea, Gulf
771 of Aden and southwest Indian Ocean, across the northern Indian Ocean to Southeast Asia,
772 Japan and the East China Sea, and the West and Central Pacific Ocean (Aeby et al., 2008).
773 Despite occurring in a wide range of reef environments, *Acropora austera* is typically
774 uncommon except on upper reef slopes where it is exposed to water turbulence and it has an
775 arborescent growth form (Veron, 2000). As a result, this species is predominantly found
776 between depths of 0.5 and 20 m (Aeby et al., 2008). This species forms significant patches on
777 reef crests and flats in South Africa and, on TMR, reaches a peak abundance of 7% on the reef
778 flat, but diminishes in abundance on pinnacles and the upper fore-reef (Celliers, 2001). An
779 overall mean density of 0.08 colonies m⁻² has been found on Maputaland reefs, with colonies

780 ranging in size from 3.5-130 cm and the smallest size of a sexually mature colony found at 9.5
781 cm (Montoya-Maya et al., 2014). However larger stands in excess of 8 m diameter have been
782 observed (Hart pers. obs.). This species seems to be dynamic, and was once dominant on Five-
783 mile Reef (Celliers and Schleyer, 2008), where it constituted 43.9% of the cover of hard corals
784 on the reef crest. The majority of this has subsequently vanished (Schleyer pers. comm.).
785 *Acropora austera*, is one of the few corals that may be responsible for reef framework
786 production on South African reefs. It forms large, monospecific stands, which increase in size
787 with an increase in depth (Riegl and Riegl, 1996) Although *Acropora austera* has a fast linear
788 extension growth rate of 2.45 cm y⁻¹, the skeletal structure is fragile and susceptible to storm
789 and diver damage (Grimmer, 2011; Riegl and Cook, 1995; Riegl and Riegl, 1996). This species
790 broadcast spawns locally (Massé, 2014), further north at Vamizi Island in northern
791 Mozambique (Sola et al., 2016) and at Moorea in French Polynesia (Carroll et al., 2005).
792 Acroporids, in particular *A. austera*, have been shown to constitute nursery habitats for fish on
793 local reefs (Floros and Schleyer, 2017).

794



795

796

797 **Fig. 1.2.** *Acropora austera* (A) and *Hydnophora exesa* (B) colonies on Two-mile reef, Sodwana
798 Bay.

799

800 1.5. Chapter overviews

801 This thesis consists of six chapters which cover a combination of field and laboratory work. A
802 literature review and background to the rationale with research question and study aims are
803 provided in Chapter 1. An overview of the study location and the global materials and methods

804 used in this thesis are provided in Chapter 2. The fertilisation ecology of two representative
805 scleractinians is investigated in Chapter 3. This is followed by an *ex situ* assessment of whether
806 two crustose coralline algae taxa induce the settlement of coral larvae of the two focal coral
807 taxa in Chapter 4. An *in situ* assessment of the spatial dynamics of coral recruitment and the
808 effect of herbivore and predator exclusion on a focal high-latitude reef in South Africa is
809 provided in Chapter 5. Finally a conclusion is provided in Chapter 6. As chapters were prepared
810 for publication in peer-reviewed journals, some repetition was unavoidable.

811 **Chapter 2:**

812 **Global materials and methods**

813 **2.1. Maputaland marginal high-latitude reefs and coastline**

814 Coral-dominated reefs extend down the east coast of Africa and reach their southern
815 distributional limit along the Maputaland coastline in northern KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa
816 (Riegl et al., 1995). Consequently, the high-latitude coral communities on Maputaland reefs
817 are among the southernmost coral-dominated reefs in the world (Fig. 2.1). These dispersed
818 reefs are situated ~700 m offshore on the narrow (~3 km wide) continental shelf, parallel to the
819 Maputaland coastline, which is straight and comprised of sandy beaches backed by elevated
820 dunes (Mitchell et al., 2005) with intermittent aeolianite or rocky points (Anderson and Bolton,
821 2005). Smaller rivers drain into an inland lake system behind the dune-line, which resulted
822 from sea level changes over a number of ice ages (Mitchell et al., 2005). No large rivers flow
823 into the sea in the vicinity of the Maputaland reefs (Schleyer, 2000) and horizontal water clarity
824 is seldom less than 15 m (Ramsay, 1991). However, tropical cyclones can occasionally reach
825 these Maputaland reefs between September and February, resulting in swells of 10 m and flood
826 damage from heavy rainfall of as much as 700 mm over a three day period (see Hunter, 1988;
827 Maud, 1980). Distinct bands in sediment cores collected on a Maputaland reef provide evidence
828 of flooding events which could have resulted in the transport of sediment from St. Lucia
829 Estuary northwards to Sodwana Bay (Hayman, 2015).

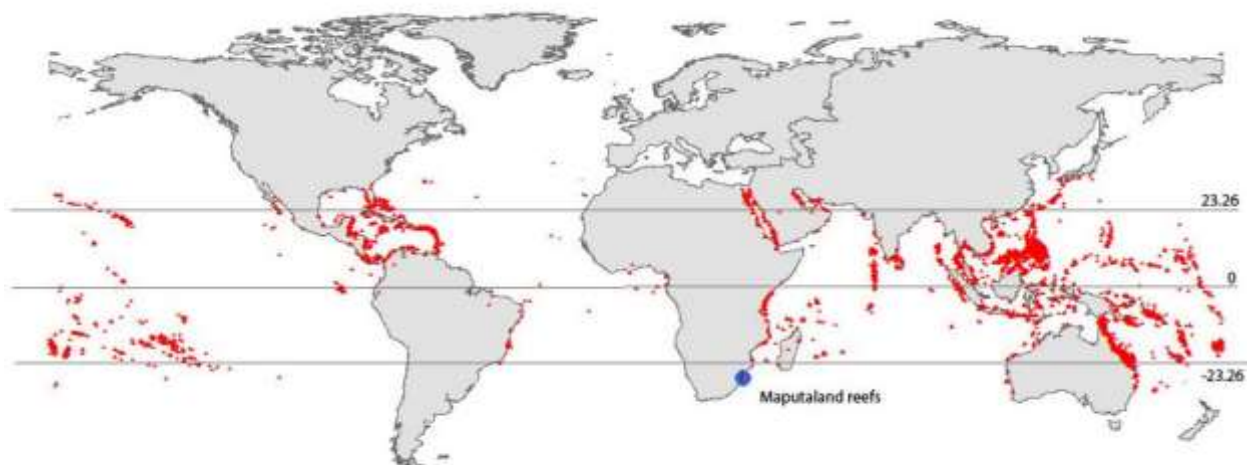
830

831 Maputaland reefs are comprised of eroded Pleistocene dune and beach rock sequences
832 (Ramsay, 1996; Ramsay and Mason, 1990). The substratum is predominantly flat with low
833 pinnacles and shallow drop-offs and gullies. Few pinnacles approach the surface, with the
834 majority of the reef structure lying between 9-34 m (Ramsay and Mason, 1990); the distinct
835 zonation of true coral reefs is absent (Ramsay and Mason, 1990; Riegl et al., 1995). They are
836 not true accretive reefs (Riegl et al., 1995) and are marginal reefs with a thin veneer of coral
837 growth (Ramsay and Mason, 1990; Schleyer and Celliers, 2003).

838

839 Decreased water temperature, light and carbon saturation state are believed to be key factors
840 which limit coral growth and reef accretion at high-latitudes (Kleypas et al., 1999). However,

841 coral growth rates on Maputaland reefs do not seem to be restricted as the growth rates of
 842 *Porites lutea* (Ramsay and Cohen, 1997) and *Acropora austera* (Grimmer, 2011), are
 843 comparable to more tropical regions. Instead, large swells regularly damage both living and
 844 dead corals (Grimmer, 2011; Riegl, 2001) and the high turbulence experienced on the reefs
 845 results in bio-erosion and sediment resuspension rather than accretion and cementation
 846 (Grimmer, 2011). Three submarine canyons breach the shelf in the Sodwana Bay region;
 847 Jesser, Wright and White Sands Canyons (Ramsay, 1994) which feed cooler, upwelled water
 848 that potentially limits coral bleaching (Riegl, 2003). Unlike elsewhere in East Africa, the 1998
 849 bleaching event affected <1% of the hard corals on the South African reefs, and relatively
 850 minor bleaching was recorded in 2000, 2002, 2010 and 2016 (Celliers and Schleyer, 2002;
 851 Floros et al., 2004; Porter, 2018)
 852

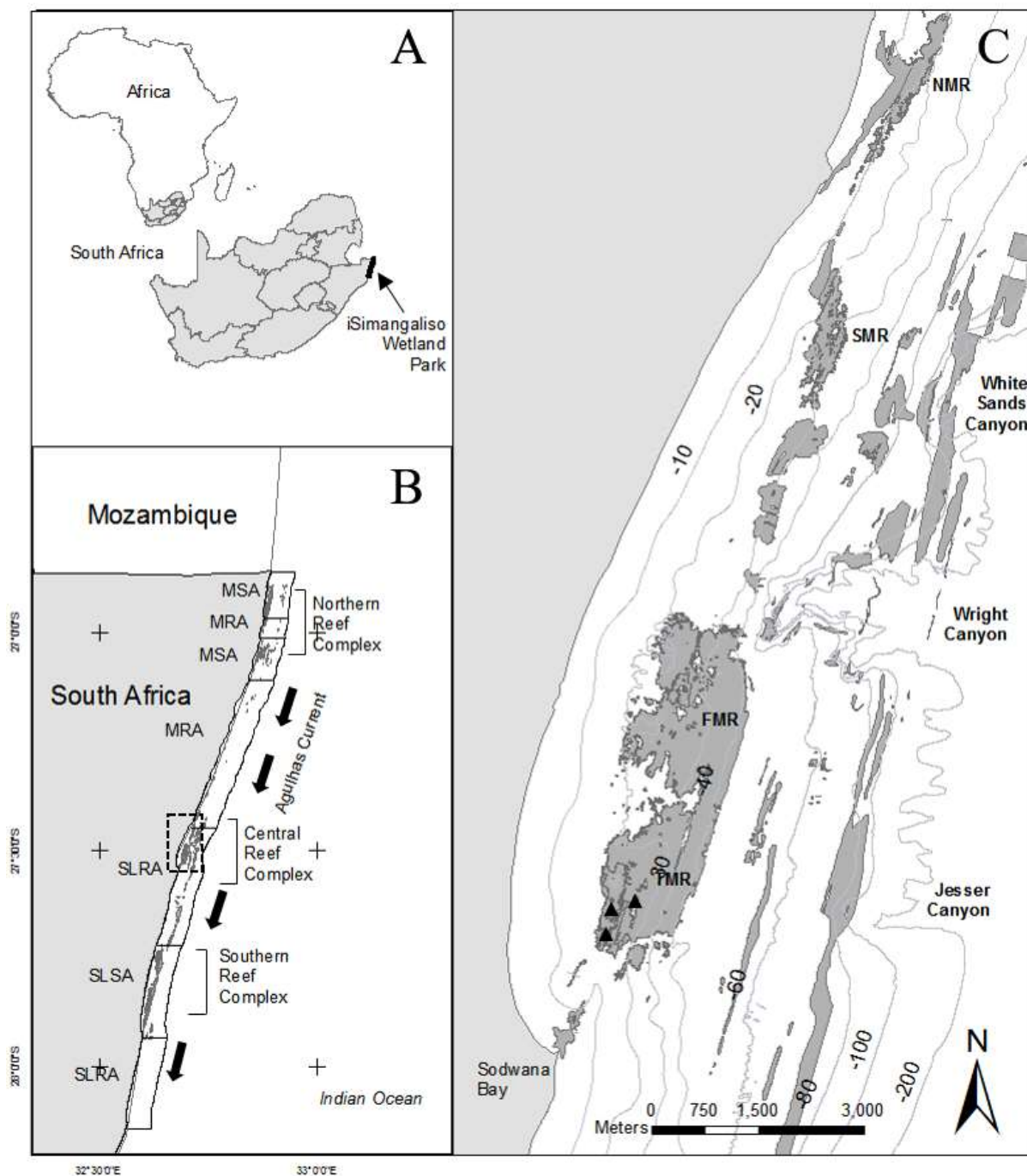


853
 854 **Fig. 2.1.** Global distribution of coral reefs, including marginal reefs. Map comprised of data
 855 from ReefBase (http://www.reefbase.org/gis_maps/datasets.aspx).
 856

857 2.2. Spatial structure and management of reefs

858 Maputaland reefs are located within two adjoining Marine Protected Areas (MPAs) that
 859 constitute the greater marine component of the iSimangaliso Wetland Park (iSWP), a United
 860 Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO) World Heritage Site,
 861 which spans 155 km and extends 3 nautical miles offshore. The Maputaland MPA (proclaimed
 862 in 1986), and the St Lucia MPA (proclaimed in 1979) extend from Kosi Bay down to White
 863 Sands Canyon, and from White Sands Canyon down to Cape St. Lucia respectively. Spatially,

864 Maputaland reefs have been partitioned into three geographical complexes (northern, central,
865 and southern) and comprise restricted-use and sanctuary zones which fall under the Marine
866 Living Resource Act. Human activities are prohibited in sanctuary zones. In contrast, restricted
867 zones occur in the central complex, where recreational fishing (boat- and shore-based),
868 spearfishing and SCUBA diving are permitted. An exception is Two-mile Reef where fishing
869 may occur at depths >30 m, and SCUBA diving is permitted. Boat-based fishing is restricted
870 to gamefish species, while shore-based fishers are allowed to catch both game and reef fish.
871 The majority of the subtidal reefs are only accessible by vessel and no anchoring is allowed.
872 The central complex at Sodwana Bay is a focal point for boat-based fishing and recreational
873 SCUBA diving which generates revenue in excess of R33 261 836 and R8260224 respectively
874 (Laing, 2013). An increase in diving pressure on these reefs during the 1980s and 1990s
875 resulted in measurable damage and subsequent recommendations on sustainable diving limits
876 (Schleyer and Tomalin, 2000). The mean yearly number of dives conducted on reefs in the
877 central complex from 2012-2015 was 63174 (Olbers pers. comm.).
878



879

880 **Fig. 2.2.** Location of the iSimangaliso Wetland Park on the Maputaland coastline of South
 881 Africa (A), with (B) the spatial separation of the northern, central and southern reef complexes
 882 within the protected area (SLRA = St. Lucia Restricted Area, SLSA = St. Lucia Sanctuary
 883 Area, MRA = Maputaland Restricted Area, MSA = Maputaland Sanctuary Area); and (C) the
 884 location of the prominent reefs within the central complex (TMR = Two-mile Reef, FMR =
 885 Four-mile Reef and NMR = Nine-mile Reef). The three monitoring sites used in this study on
 886 TMR are indicated with solid triangles.

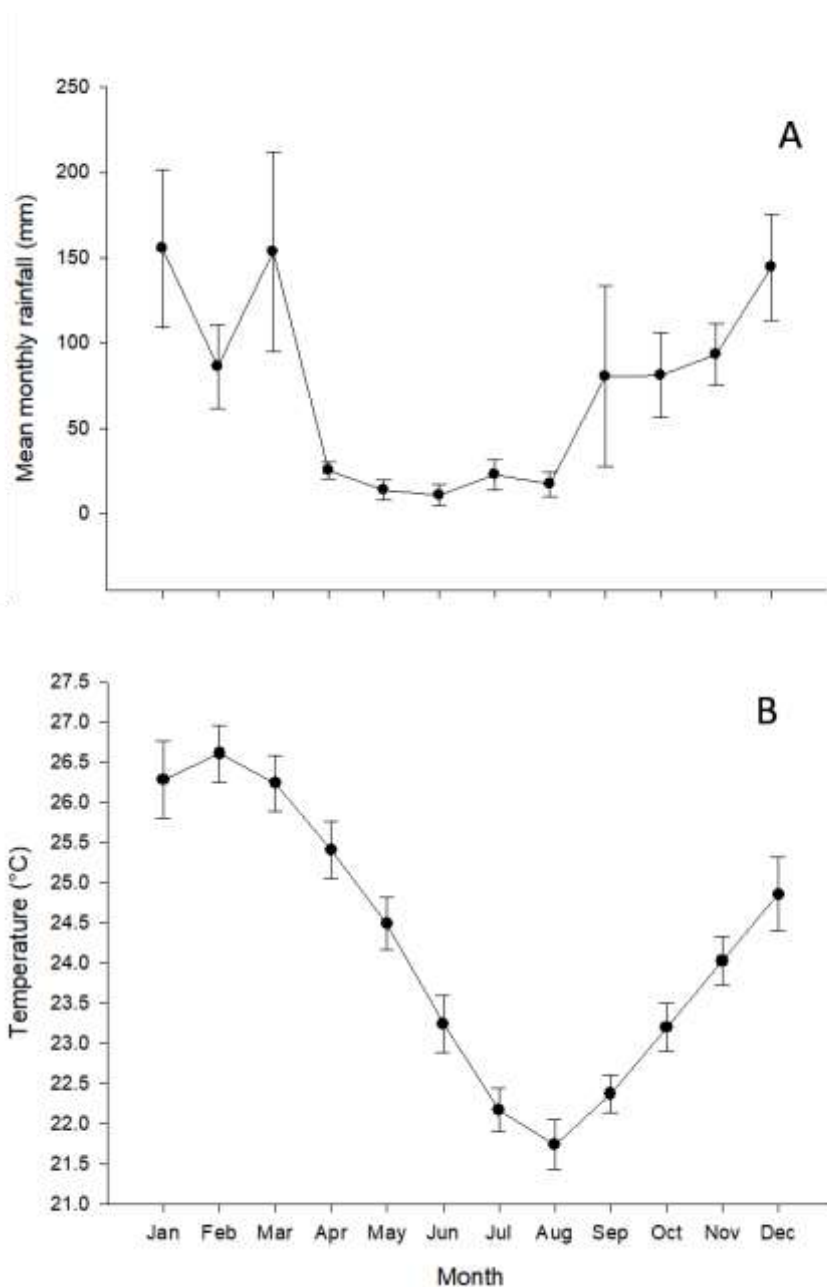
887 **2.3. Currents, upwelling, swells and tides**

888 The Agulhas Current, a typical western boundary current, flows southward along the shelf edge
889 of the east coast of South Africa with a mean velocity of 1.4 m/s, conveying warm tropical and
890 subtropical water southwards (Hutchings et al., 2002; Lutjeharms, 2006, Fig. 2.3B). The
891 current flow on the reefs is predominantly north-south, with occasional reversal currents due
892 to southerly winds (Morris, 2009). A northern counter-current exists inshore which is generated
893 by winds and wave refraction (Morris, 2009). This feeds sediment to the beaches and large
894 coastal dunes on the shores of this coastline (Mitchell et al., 2005). Upwelling of cooler water
895 occurs along the narrow continental shelf and may be transported to inshore reefs on the shelf
896 (Morris, 2009). The high energy Maputaland coastline (Mitchell et al., 2005; Riegl et al., 1995)
897 receives substantial swells which are predominantly >1 m (Celliers, 2001; Schleyer, 1999).
898 Additionally, large storm swells originate in the Mozambique Channel and can result in or
899 breaking water on the shallower reef areas (Riegl, 2001). Current flow and surge generated by
900 swells results in considerable water movement on the reefs, but only weak tidal currents occur
901 on the reefs due to their depth. The reefs are exposed to a semi-diurnal tidal regime, with an
902 average tidal range of ~0.5 m to 2 m during spring and neap tides respectively.

903

904 **2.4. Precipitation and seawater physico-chemical parameters**

905 Of the total rainfall, 61% falls during the austral summer from December to March (Fig. 2.3.A),
906 which coincides with the reproductive period of corals in the region (Chapter 1.4). A Star-Oddi
907 Starmon underwater temperature recorder was installed at a depth of 18 m on Nine-mile Reef
908 in 1993 to record long-term changes in water temperature. Hourly average readings taken from
909 minute recordings between 1993 and 2000 showed an increase of 0.15°C p.a., after which the
910 temperature decreased by 0.07°C p.a. up until 2008 (Schleyer et al., 2008). A recent update of
911 this ongoing dataset has indicated that water temperature at the study site has been decreasing
912 by 0.03 °C p.a. between 2000 and 2016 (Porter and Schleyer, 2017). Over the past five years
913 (Dec 2012-Dec 2017), the overall mean temperature has been $24.25 \pm 1.82^{\circ}\text{C}$ (SE). A
914 consistent seasonal temperature pattern is evident, ranging from the lowest monthly average of
915 21.34°C in August to the highest monthly average of 26.27°C recorded in February (Fig.
916 2.3.B). Salinity values for Maputaland reefs have been reported to range from 34.33-35.92 and
917 as predicted for their high-latitude location these reefs experience extremely low ΩAr
918 concentrations in winter (mean: 3.00 ± 0.37 SD), slightly higher in summer (mean: 3.54 ± 0.36
919 SD), which is anticipated to limit their accretion (Hayman, 2015; Kleypas et al., 1999).



920
 921
 922
 923
 924
 925
 926
 927

Fig. 2.3. Monthly mean \pm SE (A) rainfall recorded at Mbazwana Airfield ~3 km from Two-mile Reef (2012-2015) and (B) water temperature recorded at 18m depth on Nine-mile Reef within the central reef complex at Sodwana Bay during the study period (2011-2016). Rainfall and seawater temperature data were provided by the South African Weather Service and from the Oceanographic Research Institute respectively.

928 **2.5. Biodiversity**

929 Maputaland reefs comprise a blend of both tropical and temperate marine organisms (Schleyer
930 and Celliers, 2003). Coral communities on Maputaland reefs attain a high level of biodiversity
931 of Indo-Pacific corals, with soft coral cover comprising relatively few species (39 species)
932 exceeding that of the more diverse scleractinian cover (93 species) over most of the reef area
933 (see Schleyer and Celliers, 2003). Collectively, hard and soft corals constitute the majority of
934 the living epibenthic cover ($26.9 \pm 15.0\%$ and $32.0 \pm 11.9\%$ respectively) (Celliers and Schleyer,
935 2008). The diversity and percentage cover of corals reduces drastically further south of Leven
936 Point (Schleyer, 1999; Schleyer et al., 2006). Long-term monitoring of the benthic community
937 cover on NMR has revealed a reduction of 0.95% pa in soft coral cover in an ongoing decline
938 (Porter and Schleyer, 2017). In contrast, an increase in hard coral cover of 0.26% pa has
939 occurred, which is largely attributable to their increase in cover between 1993 and 2005, as the
940 overall hard coral cover has remained constant at around 18% for the last nine years (Porter
941 and Schleyer, 2017). Seaweed communities on the Maputaland reefs are structurally and
942 floristically similar to other tropical coral reefs and mainly consist of compact turfs. A total of
943 104 non-coralline macroscopic algal taxa have been recorded on shallow subtidal reefs at
944 Sodwana Bay, comprising 82 Rhodophyta, 14 Chlorophyta and eight Phaeophyta (Anderson
945 et al., 2005). *Lobophora variagata* and non-geniculate corallines are dominant in the seaweed
946 assemblage on TMR (Gersun et al., 2016).

947

948 The overall fish species richness on South African coral reefs is comparable to that of other
949 reefs in the Western Indian Ocean, with six families found to contribute more than 50% towards
950 the fish community composition; namely Labridae, Acanthuridae, Chaetodontidae, Lutjanidae,
951 Pomacentridae and Serranidae (Floros et al., 2013). The fish community structure on
952 Maputaland reefs has been found to differ significantly according to reef protection status, with
953 greater abundance on sanctuary reefs compared to open reefs (Floros et al., 2013).

954

955 **2.6. Study reef**

956 The collection of gravid corals for experimental work conducted in Chapters 3 and 4, and the
957 attachment of settlement tiles used in Chapter 5, was conducted on TMR, the largest reef within
958 the central complex. This reef covers approximately 1.9 km^2 , with a maximum length and width
959 of 2.1 km and 0.9 km respectively (see Ramsay and Mason, 1990). This reef is the closest to
960 the boat launch site at Jesser Point and, as a result receives the greatest diving pressure (Riegl

961 and Riegl, 1996; Schleyer and Tomalin, 2000). Consequently TMR is anticipated to have the
962 highest chance of becoming degraded within this reef complex (Celliers, 2001). The reef
963 structure of TMR is typical of other Maputaland reefs, ranging in depth from 6–10 m on its
964 shallowest pinnacles, to 14–19 m on extensive reef flats, and 24–27 m at the outer edge of the
965 fore-reef (Celliers and Schleyer, 2008). The majority of TMR is populated by the dominant
966 benthic community found on the high-latitude reefs in South Africa (Celliers and Schleyer,
967 2008), with scleractinians constituting $29 \pm 7.8\%$ cover (Celliers, 2001).

968

969 **2.7. Collection and husbandry of gravid *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa* colonies** 970 **for gamete harvesting and *ex situ* experimental work**

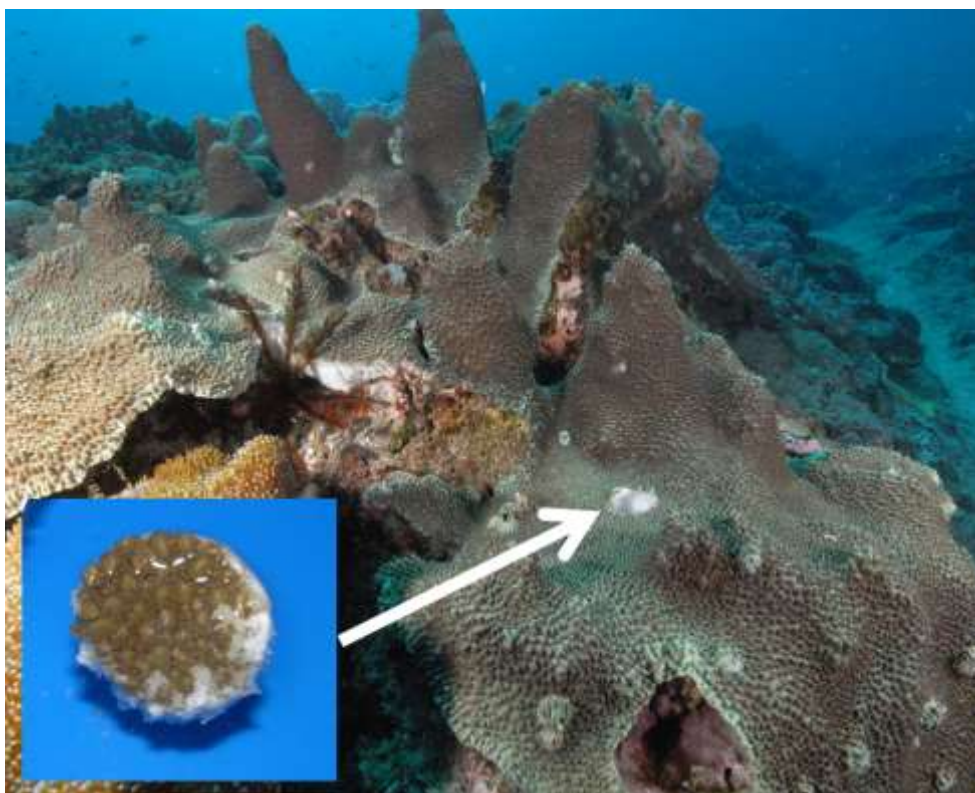
971 Spot assessments of the reproductive status of six *A. austera* and *H. exesa* colonies were
972 conducted five nights prior to the full moon in December 2014, January 2015, February 2015,
973 and March 2015 to enable the collection of gravid colonies for *ex situ* experimental spawning
974 work (Chapters 3 and 4). The timing of reproductive sample collection was based on previous
975 work which had established that gamete release of broadcast spawning corals occurred in
976 January, February or March (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998; Massé, 2014; Massé et al., 2013).
977 Stainless steel corers with an inner diameter of 18 mm and sharpened at one end were used to
978 collect core samples from *H. exesa* colonies by driving corers 2 cm into colonies with a
979 hammer. This enabled sufficient material to be collected to obtain an accurate assessment of
980 the reproductive status of colonies, but minimized the amount of damage to colonies during
981 sample collection (Fig. 2.4). Reproductive samples were taken from *A. austera* branches with
982 side-cutters. Samples were only collected from colonies greater than 40 cm minimum diameter
983 to ensure their maturity. Reproductive samples from both species of corals were collected from
984 the central area of colonies, as fecundity can be significantly reduced towards the edge
985 (Chornesky and Peters, 1987). In addition, *A. austera* branches were cut at least 5 cm away
986 from the branch tip to ensure reproductively active material was collected. The colour of
987 oocytes was used to predict the month in which colonies were anticipated to spawn (Guest pers.
988 comm.). Both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* colonies contained pigmented oocytes when they were
989 assessed two days prior to the full moon in March 2015 (Fig. 2.5).

990

991 Hand-sized fragments (~20 cm width) from six *A. austera* and *H. exesa* colonies were collected
992 from TMR at a depth of between 11–12 m a day before the full moon in March, as this
993 immediately preceded the predicted spawning period of these species. Fragments were

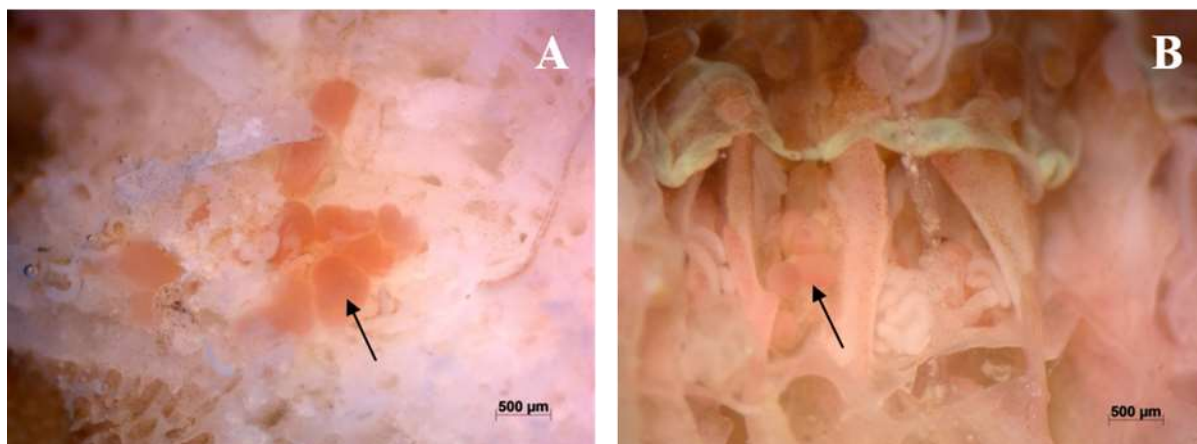
994 packaged individually into plastic bags filled with 2/3 water and 1/3 oxygen and transported to
995 the ORI research aquarium in fibreglass coolers. Fragments were acclimated and added to two
996 indoor 1400 L (200 cm x 100 cm x 70 cm) temperature controlled ($26\pm 0.5^{\circ}\text{C}$), flow through
997 tanks (0.024 l/hr) illuminated with Odyssey T5-120 lighting ($150\ \mu\text{Em}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$) on a 10 hr light
998 cycle from 8:00-16:00. Fragments were housed on Eggcrate sheeting, positioned ~40 cm below
999 the water surface. A weighted cylinder (inverted 20 L bucket with the base removed) was
1000 placed around each colony just before the lights turned off (Fig. 2.6). These allowed water
1001 exchange from below but captured spawned gametes at the surface once they were released.
1002 Details regarding the processing of gametes for fertilisation experiments and larval rearing are
1003 provided in Chapter 3 and 4.

1004
1005



1006
1007
1008

Fig. 2.4. *Hydnophora exesa* sample collected with a corer to determine reproductive status.



1009
1010
1011
1012
1013

Fig. 2.5. Pigmented *Acropora austra* (A) and *Hydnophora exesa* eggs (B) which indicate that colonies were gravid and anticipated to spawn after the next full moon.



1014
1015
1016
1017
1018

Fig. 2.6. *Acropora austra* (A) and *Hydnophora exesa* (B) moments prior to spawning and the collection of gametes from the water surface (C)

1019 **Chapter 3:**

1020 **Fertilisation ecology of *Hydnophora exesa* and *Acropora austra***

1021 **3.1. Abstract**

1022 The successful fertilisation of coral gametes is the first step in a new colony's life but the
1023 dynamics of this process is dependent on the coral's reproductive strategy and the
1024 environmental setting at the time of spawning. Broadcast spawning corals typically
1025 synchronously release gametes as positively buoyant egg-sperm bundles which float to the
1026 surface and dissociate. This provides a narrow time-frame for fertilisation to occur before
1027 sperm become too diluted or die. Here, *in vitro* fertilisation experiments were conducted on
1028 two scleractinian broadcast spawning corals, *Acropora austra* and *Hydnophora exesa*,
1029 situated at their distributional limit in South Africa. Their dependence on sperm concentration
1030 (10^6 - 10^2 sperm ml⁻¹) and salinity (17.65 psu to 35.29 psu) for successful fertilisation were
1031 assessed. An equal contribution of gametes from four colonies were combined for each species,
1032 following rinsing, and left for 3 hrs under sperm concentration and salinity treatment levels.
1033 Fertilisation success was then quantified by calculating the proportion of cleaved embryos.
1034 Fertilisation success of both *A. austra* and *H. exesa* diminished with a reduction in sperm
1035 concentration. Fertilisation success of *A. austra* and *H. exesa* was highest at 10^6 and 10^5 sperm
1036 ml⁻¹ respectively ($56.46\% \pm 0.83$ and $38.76\% \pm 1.29$, mean \pm SE), with a significant 80% and
1037 58% reduction for the respective species occurring at 10^4 sperm ml⁻¹. A reduction in surface
1038 salinity by 7.06 psu from ambient levels on the night of spawning significantly reduced the
1039 fertilisation success of *A. austra* and *H. exesa* by 56% and 79% respectively. This study
1040 provides the first assessment of fertilisation success of corals on a high-latitude reef in South
1041 Africa with implications for reef resilience and elucidates differences among these two
1042 representative coral species from reefs which are typically turbulent, deeper and contain less
1043 coral cover than tropical counterparts.

1044

1045 **3.2. Introduction**

1046 Fertilisation of coral gametes following sexual reproduction enables corals to adapt to changing
1047 environments. Simultaneous hermaphroditic broadcast spawning is the dominant reproductive
1048 pattern among scleractinian corals (87.6% of 404 scleractinians reported in Harrison, 2011)

1049 whereby polyps release their gametes on a select few nights each year for external fertilisation
1050 (see Baird et al., 2009; Guest et al., 2008; Harrison, 2011; Richmond and Hunter, 1990).
1051 Gametes are typically packaged together as egg-sperm bundles, bound together by mucous
1052 from eggs. Bundles float to the water surface after release, due to the lipid content of eggs,
1053 where dissociation occurs and cross-fertilisation of gametes to occur. Egg-sperm bundles are
1054 therefore an efficient strategy that maximises the chance of gamete encounters (Padilla-
1055 Gamiño et al., 2011) as the time in which fertilisation can occur is limited by the aging of
1056 gametes and sperm dilution (Oliver and Babcock, 1992). Eggs play a role in sperm attraction,
1057 activation, chemotaxis and suppression (Morita et al., 2006). Fertilisation of gametes is
1058 dependent on both the status of parent stock (for example proximity of mates (Levitan and
1059 Petersen, 1995), fecundity (Chui et al., 2014), and synchrony in the release of gametes from
1060 parent corals (Carlon, 1999)) and the environmental conditions, such as wind and water
1061 turbulence during spawning (Padilla-Gamiño et al., 2011). Bundles are broken up quicker in
1062 rough surface conditions, thereby shortening the pre-competency period before fertilisation can
1063 occur. Investigations into the stressors which disrupt reproductive success of corals are needed
1064 as these may not necessarily affect mature coral colonies, but can compromise reproduction
1065 and the subsequent recruitment of new genetically diverse individuals. Therefore this study
1066 considered two factors which could potentially affect fertilisation success of corals, namely
1067 reduced sperm concentration and hyposalinity.

1068

1069 *3.2.2. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success*

1070 The majority of reef-building corals mass spawn in synchrony, driven by the lunar cycle, which
1071 probably results in increased fertilisation success (Babcock et al., 1986; Hayashibara et al.,
1072 1993). Sperm have a relatively limited life span after egg-sperm bundles have dissociated
1073 (Knowlton and Jackson, 1993) and rapidly become diluted, thereby decreasing the occurrence
1074 of sperm-egg collisions (Levitan and Petersen, 1995). Although *in vitro* studies have shown
1075 that coral gametes can successfully fertilise as much as six hours after spawning (Omori et al.,
1076 2001), they did not take into account the progressive dilution of gametes over time which can
1077 result in a reduction of the fertilisation window to less than an hour. Many broadcast spawning
1078 corals' sperm concentrations range between 10^5 and 10^6 sperm ml^{-1} after release (Nozawa et
1079 al., 2015; Oliver and Babcock, 1992), with a reduction in fertilisation success below 10^5 due to
1080 sperm limitation, or above 10^7 due to polyspermy (Marshall, 2006). Of concern are the results
1081 of a study which has indicated that a 50 fold increase in sperm concentration is required to

1082 achieve comparable fertilisation success when temperature and pCO₂ are increased to levels
1083 predicted to be reached by the end of this century (Albright and Mason, 2013).

1084

1085 3.2.3. *Effect of salinity on fertilisation success*

1086 A consequence of the release of positively buoyant egg-sperm bundles by broadcast spawners
1087 is that conditions on the sea surface have a significant effect on the fertilisation success of
1088 gametes and their subsequent embryonic development (Heyward and Negri, 2012; Ricardo et
1089 al., 2015). One such factor is the periodic reduction in salinity of ocean surface water due to
1090 riverine input and rainfall, which are predicted to become more prevalent due to increases in
1091 the frequency and severity of storms associated with climate change (Du Plessis and Burger,
1092 2015; Trenberth, 1999). Indeed, coral spawning has been observed during rainfall (Harrison et
1093 al., 1984; Nozawa, 2012b, Hart pers observation), which has resulted in hyposalinity of the
1094 surface layers (Hedouin et al., 2015; Vermeij et al., 2006). Changes in surface salinity due to
1095 rainfall are dependent on the amount of rain, wind speed (Drushka et al., 2016) and the size of
1096 raindrops, whereby smaller drops cause a large change in surface salinity, but a much less
1097 pronounced change at depth due to less mixing (Katsaros and Buettner, 1969). As a result of
1098 its density, low salinity water generally remains at the surface. Although understudied, osmotic
1099 stress has been shown to result in a reduction in the fertilisation success of corals, with
1100 indications that their tolerance is taxon specific (Hedouin et al., 2015; Scott et al., 2013; True,
1101 2012; Vermeij et al., 2006). Few studies have investigated this aspect, with a limited number
1102 of coral taxa considered (Hedouin et al., 2015; Humphrey et al., 2008; Scott et al., 2013). The
1103 fertilisation of gametes is more affected by hyposalinity than the subsequent embryonic
1104 development, highlighting the need for investigations during this vital reproductive process
1105 (Hedouin et al., 2015).

1106

1107 *Study aims*

1108 While the production of coral gametes (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998) and larval settlement
1109 (Glassom et al., 2006) have been described on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa, there has
1110 been no investigation of their fertilisation success. In this study we assessed how a reduction
1111 in sperm concentration and water salinity affect the fertilisation success of *Acropora austera*
1112 and *Hydnophora exesa*, from a marginal reef in South Africa.

1113

1114 3.3. Materials and methods

1115 3.3.1. Study site and coral gamete collection

1116 Fragments from six gravid colonies of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* were randomly collected from
1117 Two-mile Reef (TMR) at Sodwana Bay, South Africa (27°33'28"S; 32°41'10"E) a week before
1118 the full moon of their predicted month of spawning. Fragments were transported in fibreglass
1119 coolers to the Oceanographic Research Institute at uShaka Sea World (29°52'06"S;
1120 31°02'39"E), where they were collectively maintained on a rack (~ 40 cm bellow the water
1121 surface) in two 1400 l flow through aquariums with T5 lighting ($150 \mu\text{Em}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$) on a 10 hr light
1122 cycle from 8:00-16:00. Submersible pumps provided water movement in the aquarium (See
1123 Chapter 2.7 for further details).

1124
1125 Weighted cylinders were placed around each colony before dusk to contain the spawn released
1126 from each colony (Fig. 2.6), thereby enabling selective cross-fertilisation experiments
1127 (described below) to be conducted. Corals were inspected briefly every 15 minutes after the
1128 'gamete collectors' had been installed to determine coral setting and spawning times. Gamete
1129 collectors were briefly raised from the underlying rack during each inspection before spawning
1130 occurred to enhance water exchange to the corals and submersible pumps were turned off at
1131 the first sign of corals setting. Gametes from both species of coral were collected over two
1132 consecutive nights that they spawned (two and three nights after full moon for *H. exesa* and six
1133 and seven nights after full moon in March 2015 for *A. austera*). For both species, a minor
1134 spawn occurred on the first night, with fewer corals participating and each releasing less
1135 gametes than the second night of spawning. The sperm concentration experiments for both
1136 coral species were conducted on the first night of spawning, and the salinity and self-
1137 fertilisation experiments were conducted on the second night of spawning (See sections 3.3.2,
1138 3.3.3 and 3.3.4 below). For all experiments, spawned colonies were each left to spawn for ~20
1139 min once spawning had commenced, after which egg-sperm bundles from each colony were
1140 harvested off the water surface within gamete collectors with plastic cups, minimizing the
1141 amount of water collected in the process (Fig. 2.6). This was done to enable the collection of
1142 egg-sperm bundles before they naturally separated, and to ensure that fertilisation experiments
1143 commenced within three hours of spawning after which fertilisation can be compromised (Chui
1144 et al., 2014).

1145

1146 The cups were gently swirled to break up the egg-sperm bundles and the liquid was poured
1147 through a 100 μm sieve to separate the eggs from the sperm. Separate sieves were used for each
1148 coral to avoid cross-fertilisation during the cleaning of eggs. The resulting sperm from each
1149 colony was stored in 50 ml falcon centrifuge tubes. The sperm concentration was calculated
1150 from eight replicate counts using a haemocytometer and adjusted to a density of 10^6 sperm ml^{-1}
1151 by the addition of UV-sterilized 0.2 μm filtered seawater if required. Eggs were rinsed nine
1152 times with UV-sterilized 0.2 μm filtered seawater and then placed into graduated sterile 15 ml
1153 falcon centrifuge tubes. 'Master' egg and sperm stock solutions were created for the sperm
1154 concentration and salinity experiments and comprised the same volume of eggs (10 ml) and
1155 sperm (60 ml) in seawater from each of the four most fecund colonies that spawned on the
1156 particular night that the experiment was done. The master stocks were repeatedly inverted to
1157 ensure mixing and equal representation of gametes from the four individuals. The density of
1158 the master sperm stock was calculated from eight replicate readings taken with a
1159 hemocytometer (Levitan et al., 2004).

1160

1161 All the experiments described below were conducted on the laboratory counter in ambient light
1162 at a temperature of $\sim 26^\circ\text{C}$. The addition of eggs to sperm in all experiments was accomplished
1163 2:15 hrs after spawning and the experiments were terminated three hours after adding the eggs
1164 to the sperm vials by adding formaldehyde to fix samples at a final stock of 4% formal saline.
1165 Final assessments were done 5:15 hrs after spawning. This was within the time frame for which
1166 the majority of coral fertilisation occurs following spawning (Oliver and Babcock, 1992; Willis
1167 et al., 1997). Vials were stored in a dark cupboard until processing. During processing, the
1168 proportion of eggs which had been fertilised was calculated, with all eggs that were at or
1169 beyond the two-cell stage considered to have been fertilised.

1170

1171 *3.3.2. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success*

1172 The sperm master stock (10^6 sperm ml^{-1}) from both coral species was serially diluted to 10^5 ,
1173 10^4 , 10^3 , and 10^2 sperm ml^{-1} , thereby creating 5 working stock solutions which included the
1174 undiluted 10^6 sperm ml^{-1} stock. A 1 ml sample of each of the sperm stocks was fixed in 4%
1175 formalin for later confirmation of the sperm count. Seven milliliters of each sperm stock was
1176 added to 5 replicate glass vials with 20 μl of eggs from the egg master stock. In addition, five
1177 control vials were created which comprised 7 ml of sperm-free UV-sterilized 0.2 μm filtered
1178 seawater and 20 μl of eggs.

1179 3.3.3. *Effect of salinity on fertilisation success*

1180 Five salinity levels of natural seawater (35.29 psu), viz. 35.29, 31.76, 28.23 24.70, 21.17, and
1181 17.65 psu (i.e. a natural control, 90, 80, 70, 60 and 50%) were prepared in five replicate vials
1182 for each salinity treatment. To each vial was added 1 ml of master sperm stock (10^6 sperm ml⁻¹)
1183 ¹), 9 ml of UV-sterilized FSW at the desired psu, and 20 µl of eggs. This resulted in a reduction
1184 in the sperm concentration in vials to 10^6 sperm ml⁻¹. Salinities were confirmed from three
1185 replicate readings of a 20 ml sample from each treatment with a 856 Metrohm conductivity
1186 module and a five ring conductivity measuring cell at 25°C against a 12.87 mS/cm Metrohm
1187 conductivity standard.

1188

1189 3.3.4. *Data analysis*

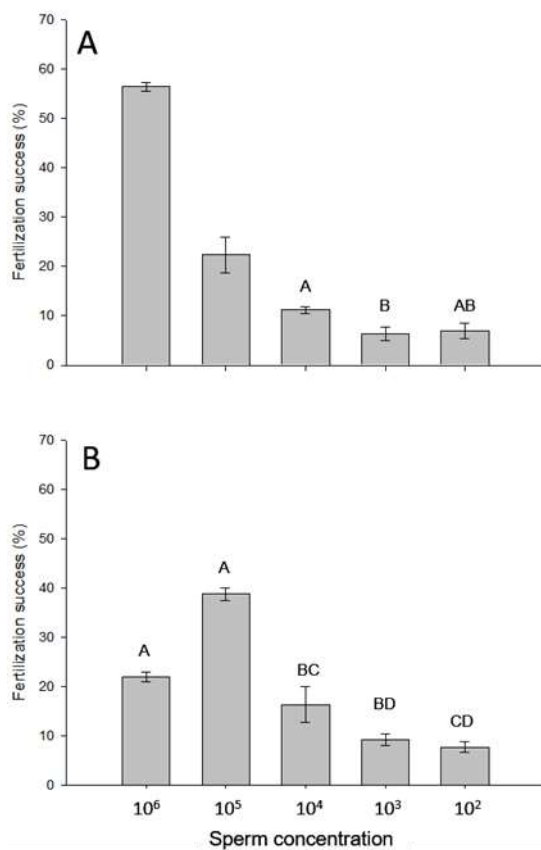
1190 Kruskal-Wallis ANOVAs were used to assess whether fertilisation success of *A. austera* and
1191 *H. exesa* differed among water salinities and sperm concentrations since the distribution of
1192 residuals resulting from ANOVA tests were non-normal, even following standard
1193 transformations. Bonferroni-adjusted pairwise comparisons were made following the finding
1194 of a significant treatment effect ($P < 0.05$). All statistical tests were conducted using IBM SPSS
1195 v23.

1196

1197 **3.4. Results**

1198 3.4.1. *Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success*

1199 Fertilisation success in the five sperm concentration treatments differed significantly in both
1200 *A. austera* and *H. exesa* (Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA: $H_{5,27} = 21.79$, $P < 0.001$ and $H_{5,27} = 21.60$,
1201 $P < 0.001$ respectively). The mean fertilisation success of no self-sperm controls was $5.62 \pm$
1202 0.45 and $9.09 \pm 3.33\%$ for *A. austera* and *H. exesa* respectively. As sperm concentration
1203 decreased from 10^4 sperm ml⁻¹ and lower, fertilisation success for *A. austera* was significantly
1204 reduced (Fig. 3.1A). The highest fertilisation success of more than 50% was observed when
1205 sperm concentration was at a maximum (10^6 sperm ml⁻¹; Fig. 3.1A). In contrast, highest
1206 fertilisation success of nearly 40% was obtained when sperm concentration was 10^5 sperm ml⁻¹
1207 ¹ for *H. exesa* (Fig. 3.1B).



1208

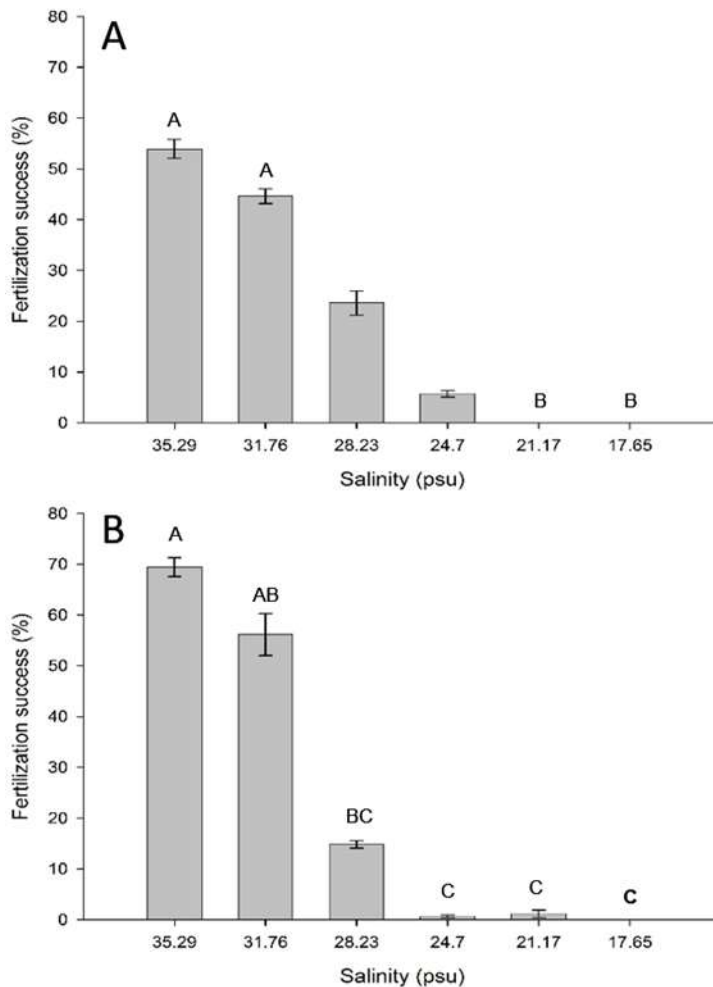
1209 **Fig. 3.1.** Mean \pm SE fertilisation success of *Acropora austera* (A) and *Hydnoophora exesa* (B)
 1210 at varying sperm concentrations. The same letter above bars indicates no significant difference
 1211 at $P < 0.01$ with a Bonferroni adjustment.

1212

1213 3.4.2. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success

1214 Fertilisation success in the six salinity treatments differed significantly for both *A. austera* and
 1215 *H. exesa* (Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA: $H_{5,30} = 28.34$, $P < 0.001$ and $H_{5,29} = 21.99$, $P < 0.001$
 1216 respectively, Fig. 3.2). The fertilisation success was greatest in the control treatment (35.29
 1217 psu) for both *A. austera* (53.92 ± 1.86 ; mean \pm SE) and *H. exesa* (69.43 ± 1.86) and decreased
 1218 with a reduction in salinity (Fig. 3.2). The mean fertilisation success of both *A. austera* and *H.*
 1219 *exesa* was reduced by 17% and 19% respectively with a 3.5 psu reduction from current
 1220 conditions (35.29 psu). However, the mean fertilisation success between these two treatments
 1221 was not significantly different in either *A. austera* or *H. exesa* ($P = 0.02$ and $P = 0.32$
 1222 respectively). A significant reduction in mean fertilisation success occurred in treatments with
 1223 a reduction of 7.06 psu or more from current conditions in both coral species. This reduced
 1224 fertilisation success by 56% and 79% in *A. austera* and *H. exesa* respectively. No fertilisation

1225 of gametes occurred in treatments at or lower than 21.07 psu for *A. austera* and 17.65 psu for
 1226 *H. exesa* (Fig. 3.2).
 1227



1228
 1229

1230 **Fig. 3.2.** Mean \pm SE fertilisation success of *Acropora austera* (A) and *Hydnophora exesa* (B)
 1231 in response to a reduction in water salinity. The same letter above bars indicates no significant
 1232 difference at $P < 0.01$ with a Bonferroni adjustment.
 1233

1234 3.5. Discussion

1235 3.5.1. Effect of sperm concentration on fertilisation success

1236 As in other investigations, this study confirms that a sperm concentration of 10^5 - 10^6 sperm ml⁻¹
 1237 ¹ results in optimum fertilisation success of coral eggs (Oliver and Babcock, 1992; Willis et al.,
 1238 1997), and that a reduction in sperm concentration from 10^5 - 10^4 can significantly reduce

1239 fertilisation success (Nozawa et al., 2015). Broadcasts spawners typically have bell-shaped
1240 fertilisation curves, where low sperm density limits fertilisation success and polyspermy
1241 prevents fertilisation when sperm densities are high (Marshall, 2006). Additionally, increased
1242 CO₂, reduced pO₂ levels and low pH at high sperm concentrations can further limit fertilisation
1243 (Oliver and Babcock, 1992). Consequently, although not statistically different from 10⁵ sperm
1244 ml⁻¹, the lower fertilisation success of *H. exesa* eggs at a sperm concentration of 10⁶ sperm ml⁻¹
1245 may have resulted from polyspermy (Levitan et al., 2004). In contrast, fertilisation success in
1246 *A. austera* was the highest in the most concentrated sperm treatment (10⁶ sperm ml⁻¹). Cross-
1247 fertilisation success from this study was however lower than other *in vitro* experiments, which
1248 are frequently above 80% success (Erfteimeijer et al., 2012; Heyward and Babcock, 1986;
1249 Nozawa et al., 2015; Willis et al., 1997). However, other Acroporids (*A. millipora* and *A.*
1250 *pulchra*) have also had low (49%) cross-fertilisation success (Willis et al., 1997). Low
1251 fertilisation rates could be the result of unhealthy gametes (Chui et al., 2014) and compatibility
1252 of the individuals crossed (Baums et al., 2013; Iguchi et al., 2009; Willis et al., 1997). Iwao et
1253 al. (2014) also report that the highest fertilisation success is achieved with crosses from six or
1254 more colonies, which was not possible in the current study as not all of the fragments collected
1255 spawned.

1256
1257 Field observations for surface slicks could not be conducted at night due to unsafe conditions
1258 at Sodwana Bay for night launches. However, water surface conditions on the exposed, high-
1259 energy Maputaland reefs in South Africa are generally turbulent, particularly during the
1260 spawning season. This has the potential for increasing sperm dilution, thereby reducing the
1261 window for successful fertilisation. Although gamete viability in *in vitro* experiments do not
1262 drop significantly until 6-8 hours after spawning in the field (Willis et al., 1997), sperm dilution
1263 could reduce the fertilisation period to less than an hour (Omori et al., 2001). Consequently, *in*
1264 *vitro* studies are possibly overestimates of *in situ* fertilisation success, where sperm dilution
1265 occurs (Iguchi et al., 2009).

1266

1267 3.5.2. Effect of salinity on fertilisation success

1268 While the tolerance of coral fragments to hyposaline conditions has been extensively studied
1269 (Downs et al., 2009; van der Merwe et al., 2014), the impact that hyposalinity has on the
1270 fertilisation of coral gametes remains understudied. Hyposalinity can play a role in the
1271 fertilisation of eggs and the embryonic development of coral larvae since the majority of corals

1272 release positively buoyant eggs, which float to the water surface where they remain during
1273 embryogenesis (approximately 2 days depending on species e.g. Tay et al., 2011). Studies
1274 which have investigated the effect of hyposalinity on the fertilisation and early life stages of
1275 corals corroborate the results obtained in this study whereby coral fertilisation success can be
1276 significantly reduced with a reduction in salinity (Hedouin et al., 2015; Palaki, 1998; Scott et
1277 al., 2013; True, 2012; Vermeij et al., 2006). Furthermore, a study which assessed embryonic
1278 development in addition to fertilisation success indicated that the fertilisation process is more
1279 vulnerable to hyposaline conditions than subsequent life stages (Hedouin et al., 2015).

1280

1281 Similarly Scott et al. (2013) found a significant reduction in the fertilisation success of *A.*
1282 *millipora* and *Platygyra daedalea* below 29.4 psu in Australia and *A. cytherea* and *A. pulchra*
1283 incurred significant reductions in fertilisation success at 29 psu and 30 psu respectively in
1284 French Polynesia (Hedouin et al., 2015). Hyposaline conditions due to rainfall have been
1285 shown to result in a drop in salinity to 28 psu in the Florida Keys (Vermeij et al., 2006) and to
1286 20 psu in French Polynesia (Hedouin et al., 2015). However, detailed assessments of changes
1287 in the seawater surface salinity at Sodwana Bay in South Africa have not been conducted. As
1288 no major rivers drain into Sodwana Bay, water salinity will probably only be affected by
1289 rainfall.

1290

1291 3.5.3. Conclusion

1292 Reduced salinity or low sperm concentrations resulted in reduced fertilisation success for both
1293 coral species in this study. Of concern is the lack in current knowledge of surface water
1294 conditions (such as salinity and turbidity) experienced during spawning events in South Africa.
1295 Thus documenting *in situ* spawning events and associated water conditions at this time is
1296 needed. There is a greater potential of gametes encountering reduced surface salinity and
1297 increased turbidity due to increases in storm intensity and frequency associated with current
1298 climate change predictions. This is particularly relevant on marginal, exposed reefs such as
1299 Sodwana Bay, where bundle dissociation and subsequent sperm dilution could occur more
1300 rapidly than observed elsewhere.

1301

1302 **3.6. Acknowledgements**

1303 We thank D. Pearton, L. Hart and F. Hart for laboratory assistance. Logistical support was
1304 provided by S. Laing, C. Floros, D. Pearton, and S. Porter. The iSimangaliso Wetland Park
1305 staff are thanked for facilitating this study and the Mazda Wildlife Fund which sponsored a
1306 vehicle. Financial support was provided by the South African Association for Marine
1307 Biological Research and The Applied Centre for Climate and Earth Science Systems.

1308

1309

1310 **Chapter 4:**

1311 **Larval settlement and post-settlement success in *Acropora austera* and** 1312 ***Hydnophora exesa***

1313 **4.1. Abstract**

1314 Larval settlement and post-settlement success of coral recruits are fundamental processes for
1315 the maintenance of coral populations and the persistence of coral reefs, making identification
1316 of factors which influence these critical. We assessed larval settlement and post-settlement
1317 success of two common South African corals, *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa*, in
1318 response to the presence of two crustose coralline algae species: *Mesophyllum sp.* and
1319 *Hydrolithon sp.* with filtered seawater (FSW) controls. Both sampling time and treatment had
1320 a significant effect on settlement of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* larvae, but no significant
1321 interaction effects were found. Settlement of both coral species in the presence of *Hydrolithon*
1322 was significantly greater than FSW; this was not the case in the presence of *Mesophyllum*. Peak
1323 settlement of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* occurred in the presence of *Hydrolithon* (48% compared
1324 to 10% in FSW for *A. austera* and 65% compared to 45% in FSW for *H. exesa*). Physical
1325 contact with CCA chips at the moment of settlement was not a requirement for larval
1326 settlement. More settlement of both coral species generally occurred on the well surfaces in the
1327 CCA treatments apart from *H. exesa* for which settlement was greater on *Hydrolithon*
1328 fragments. At termination *A. austera* obtained the greatest post-settlement success in the
1329 *Mesophyllum* treatment ($21.67 \pm 7.23\%$) whereas *H. exesa* post-settlement success was greatest
1330 in the *Hydrolithon* treatment ($55.00 \pm 10.47\%$). However, these differences in post-settlement
1331 success were not significant. *Acropora austera* and *H. exesa* were still capable of settlement
1332 69 and 75 DAF respectively in FSW. These results show the contribution of chemosensory
1333 communication during the settlement process of coral larvae and how these differ between
1334 taxa. Trends suggest that settlement requirements are more stringent for *A. austera* planulae
1335 than *H. exesa* and that *Mesophyllum* collected from the exhibit at uShaka Sea World was not
1336 an efficient settlement inducer for larvae of the corals investigated in this study.

1337

1338 **4.2. Introduction**

1339 Successful settlement and metamorphosis of free swimming coral planulae and post-settlement
1340 success is essential for completion of their dispersal and progress towards becoming recruits
1341 (Babcock and Mundy, 1996; Harrington et al., 2004). Once coral embryos have developed into
1342 planulae, they develop cilia and receptors which enable them to sense and respond to
1343 environmental stimuli (Grasso et al., 2011; Morse and Morse, 1996). As with other benthic
1344 marine invertebrates, coral larval settlement is widely considered to rely on receptor-mediated
1345 processes (Hadfield, 2011). Site selectivity in coral larvae plays a role in their colonizing ability
1346 during settlement (Doropoulos et al., 2016), as taxa with less stringent requirements have a
1347 greater area to choose from. While some corals may settle without any apparent cue (Baird and
1348 Morse, 2004), others may delay or cease settlement altogether in the absence of appropriate
1349 settlement cues (Graham et al., 2008; Qian et al., 2007). Coral planulae attach to the substratum
1350 after detecting suitable settlement cues and begin to secrete their calcium carbonate skeleton,
1351 forming juvenile polyps (Harrison and Wallace, 1990). Detecting an appropriate substratum is
1352 crucial as, once planulae attach, they have a limited capacity to detach and re-enter the pelagic
1353 phase (Richmond, 1985) and need to be able to deal with post-settlement conditions (e.g.
1354 competition with other biota, evading predation).

1355

1356 Physical and environmental cues such as colour (Mason et al., 2011), sound (Vermeij et al.,
1357 2010), light (Levy et al., 2007; Lewis, 1974; Maida et al., 1994; Mundy and Babcock, 1998b),
1358 temperature (Winkler et al., 2015), depth (Babcock and Mundy, 1996; Baird et al., 2003;
1359 Suzuki et al., 2008), changes in pressure (Stake and Sammarco, 2003), physical substratum
1360 texture or topography (Davies et al., 2013; Doropoulos et al., 2016; Nozawa, 2012a; Petersen
1361 et al., 2004; Whalan et al., 2015), substratum orientation (Mundy and Babcock, 1998a), water
1362 chemistry (Dixson et al., 2014) and the presence of crustose coralline algae with their
1363 associated bacteria (Harrington et al., 2004; Heyward and Negri, 1999; Morse and Morse,
1364 1991; Quéré and Nugues, 2015; Tebben et al., 2015) affect the suitability for coral larval
1365 settlement.

1366

1367 Crustose coralline algae are a key functional group, which facilitate coral recruitment by
1368 providing consolidated surfaces, suppressing antagonistic macro-algae, and by inducing coral
1369 settlement. They directly deter macroalgal establishment on their surfaces (Figueiredo et al.,
1370 1997; Johnson and Mann, 1986) and indirectly control algal growth by harbouring micro-

1371 herbivores (Steneck, 1982). It has long been recognized that conditioning of settlement
1372 surfaces with crustose coralline algae (CCA) or microbes results in enhanced settlement by
1373 coral larvae (Morse et al., 1988; Raimondi and Morse, 2000; Ritson-Williams et al., 2009).
1374 Extracts from CCA are potent settlement and metamorphosis cues for hard corals
1375 (Harrington et al., 2004; Heyward and Negri, 1999; Morse and Morse, 1991; Tebben et al.,
1376 2015) and bacterial isolates from reef biofilms associated with CCA have also been shown to
1377 modify larval behaviour and enhance settlement (Negri et al., 2001; Sneed, 2014; Tebben et
1378 al., 2011; Tran, 2011). The settlement-inducing ability of CCA has proven to be species-
1379 specific (Doropoulos et al., 2016; Harrington et al., 2004; Ritson-Williams et al., 2014), with
1380 only a few CCA taxa shown to facilitate coral settlement (Harrington et al., 2004). Furthermore
1381 the inducing effect has been shown to be dependent on the health status of the CCA as CCA
1382 disease can significantly affect settlement and post-settlement success of coral larvae (Quéré
1383 and Nugues, 2015). Acroporids have been shown to exhibit significant selective responses to
1384 certain substrata during settlement (Baird and Morse, 2004; Doropoulos et al., 2016; Golbuu
1385 and Richmond, 2007; Harrington et al., 2004; Morse et al., 1996; Morse and Morse, 1991;
1386 Negri et al., 2001; Raimondi and Morse, 2000; Ritson-Williams et al., 2010; Ritson-Williams
1387 et al., 2014). Both *A. tenuis* and *A. millepora* have been found to preferentially settle on
1388 *Titanoderma prototypum* over other CCA species, including *Hydrolithon onkodes* (Harrington
1389 et al., 2004). The effect of CCA on the settlement of *Hydnophora* species has not yet been
1390 investigated.

1391
1392 Both *Hydrolithon* (Harrington et al., 2004) and *Mesophyllum* CCA (Heyward and Negri, 1999)
1393 have been reported to induce settlement of coral larvae. More recently, *Mesophyllum* has been
1394 shown to encourage early substrate testing and settlement of *A. muricata* larvae, but ultimately
1395 results in a lower settlement rate than seawater controls (Denis et al., 2014). Knowledge
1396 remains limited on the diversity and ecology of CCA on the high-latitude reefs of southern
1397 Africa and the effect of CCA and their associated microbes on coral settlement. Four species
1398 of *Hydrolithon* have been identified on the high-latitude reefs in South Africa, viz. *Hydrolithon*
1399 *farinosum* (Penrose and Chamberlain, 1993), *H. onkodes*, *H. samoëense* and *H. superficial*
1400 (Keats and Chamberlain, 1994a). A *Hydrolithon* sp. (hereafter referred to as *Hydrolithon*) has
1401 been readily observed growing on *A. austera* rubble on high-latitude reefs in South Africa (Hart
1402 pers. obs.). *Mesophyllum cf funafutiense* (hereafter referred to as *Mesophyllum*) also occurs on
1403 the high-latitude reefs in South Africa (Keats and Chamberlain, 1994b). It also grows

1404 prolifically in uShaka Sea World aquaria, and may thus constitute a convenient settlement
1405 inducer.

1406

1407 The settlement response and post-settlement success of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* to *Hydrolithon*
1408 and *Mesophyllum* was assessed in this study. We hypothesised that CCA would enhance larval
1409 settlement in both coral species, and that these responses would be species-specific. We
1410 predicted that settlement would occur more rapidly and be more successful in CCA treatments
1411 than filtered seawater controls.

1412

1413 **4.3. Materials and methods**

1414 *4.3.1. CCA collection and rearing of coral larvae*

1415 *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa* are well represented on Two-mile Reef (TMR) at
1416 Sodwana Bay, South Africa (27°33'28"S; 32°41'10"E), have different life-history strategies,
1417 and appear to have different tolerances to thermal stress. A large fragment of *Hydrolithon*-
1418 encrusted *A. austera* rubble was collected from TMR with a hammer and chisel to obtain this
1419 CCA. Fragments of *Mesophyllum* were collected from the rockwork in a coral exhibit at uShaka
1420 Sea World, South Africa (29°52'06"S; 31°02'39"E). These CCA were identified according to
1421 Keats and Chamberlain (1994a; 1994b).

1422

1423 Fragments of both CCA taxa were maintained in a flow-through aquarium system at the
1424 Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI) at an irradiance of 150 $\mu\text{Em}^{-2}\text{s}^{-1}$ for a week until the
1425 start of the settlement experiments. Six gravid colonies of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* were
1426 collected from TMR prior to their predicted annual spawning and maintained in a flow-through
1427 system at the ORI research aquarium. *Hydnophora exesa* spawned on 7 March 2015 and *A.*
1428 *austera* spawned six nights later on 13 March 2015. Following spawning, gametes released by
1429 the four most fecund colonies were combined in separate 20 l buckets for fertilisation, rinsed
1430 to avoid polyspermy after 30 mins, and embryos were reared in 100 l tubs according to the
1431 protocol of Guest (2010). The tubs received daily water changes of 0.2 μm filtered seawater
1432 (FSW) and were placed in a 26°C water bath to maintain a constant temperature until the larvae
1433 displayed benthic searching behaviour. The project was registered with the iSimangaliso
1434 Wetland Park authority who granted permission for this research. Samples were collected from

1435 TMR under permit RES2015/36 issued by the South African Department of Environmental
1436 Affairs and Department of Agriculture, Forestry and Fisheries. Permission for the collection
1437 of *Mesophyllum* fragments was granted by uShaka Sea World management and no permit was
1438 required.

1439

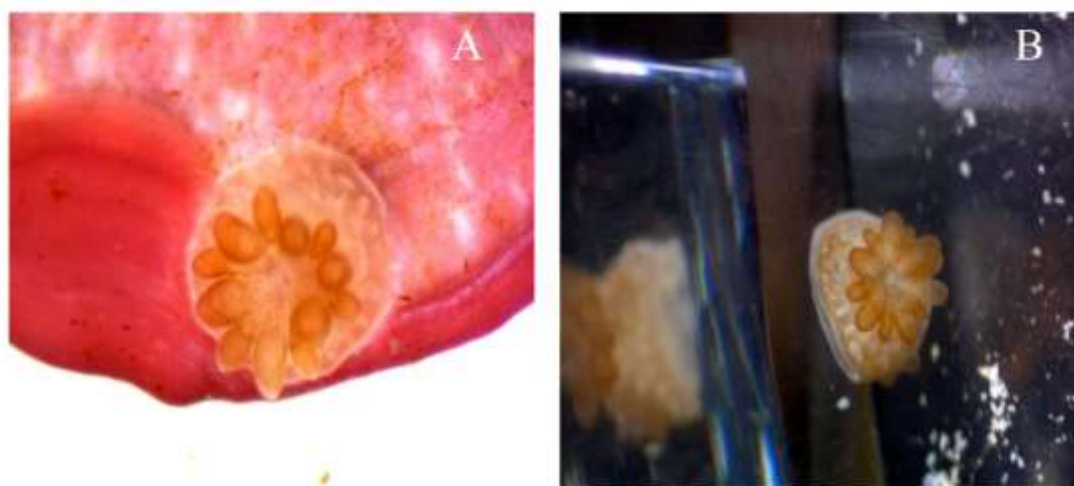
1440 4.3.2. Settlement assays

1441 Settlement experiments were started on 19 March 2015, seven days after fertilisation (DAF) of
1442 *A. austera* and 13 DAF of *H. exesa*; at which time the planulae were elongated, active and
1443 exhibiting demersal swimming and benthic searching behaviour. Settlement was tested on a
1444 chip of *Mesophyllum* or *Hydrolithon* on *A. austera* skeletal fragment, or in 0.2 μm FSW without
1445 CCA. Each treatment was randomly allocated to six replicate wells on three six-well culture
1446 plates (Greiner bio-one CELLSTAR). Untreated wells contained 15 ml of 0.2 μm FSW. The
1447 chips of CCA (approximately 5 x 5 mm) were cut from larger fragments with sidecutters, and
1448 were rinsed repeatedly with UV sterilized 0.2 μm FSW before being added to the wells. The
1449 survival of CCA chips was not compromised during the duration of the study as fragments of
1450 both *Hydrolithon* and *Mesophyllum* grew during the experiment (Fig S4.1). Ten healthy larvae
1451 of either *A. austera* or *H. exesa* were randomly selected from the grow-out tubs and added to
1452 each well. Culture plates were placed out of direct sunlight in the laboratory at a temperature
1453 of 24-26°C. Every 2-3 days, 10 ml of the water in each well was replaced with 0.2 μm UV
1454 sterilized FSW from the inlet pipes supplying water to uShaka Sea World with a pipette under
1455 a Zeiss Stemi 2000-C microscope. Experimental water conditions could differ from that of the
1456 sea due to biofouling in inlet pipes (Alexander et al., 2015). Larvae were counted in each well
1457 before and directly after water changes to ensure no healthy larvae had accidentally been
1458 removed. Detritus was removed during water changes (including partially decomposed larvae
1459 which had died) to maintain water quality and separate pipette tips were used for each well to
1460 prevent contamination.

1461

1462 The outcome of the 10 larvae added to each well at the start of the experiment was assessed 15
1463 times over a 92-day period. During each assessment, the number of settled larvae, unattached
1464 larvae, and dead larvae in each well was counted with the aid of a Zeiss Stemi 2000-C
1465 microscope and these were recorded as cumulative values. Settled larvae comprised larvae
1466 which physically attached to a substrate and deposited skeletal material. The location of settled

1467 larvae on either the plastic well surfaces or CCA fragments was noted during each assessment
1468 (Fig. 4.1). Unattached larvae comprised swimming larvae, attached but not metamorphosed, or
1469 metamorphosed but not yet attached. The latter comprised either unattached polyps with a
1470 floating buoyant skeleton (only observed in *H. exesa*) or fleshy metamorphosed polyps that lay
1471 on the bottom of the wells. Unattached larvae which had metamorphosed were not removed as
1472 polyps with a floating buoyant skeleton can potentially settle at a later stage (Vermeij, 2009)
1473 and it was unknown whether metamorphosed polyps that lay on the bottom were capable of
1474 successfully settling. Larval mortality was calculated by subtracting the count of living,
1475 unattached and settled larvae from the initial number of larvae. Consequently, larval mortality
1476 comprised the number of dead, partially decomposed larvae and those which had died and
1477 decomposed. Post-settlement success was quantified as the number of settled recruits in each
1478 well which possessed living tissue at the end of the experiment (98 DAF and 104 DAF for *A.*
1479 *austera* and *H. exesa* respectively). No overgrowth of coral recruits by CCA or dislodged
1480 recruit skeletons were observed in the study.



1481
1482
1483 **Fig. 4.1.** Representative images of *Acropora austera* recruits at termination of the experiment.
1484 (A) *Acropora austera* recruit on CCA and (B) on the side of a plastic well.
1485

1486 4.3.3. Data analysis

1487 Cumulative settlement (i.e. the number of larvae which had settled at a particular time-point,
1488 regardless of whether they were alive or not) is reported in this study and values are reported
1489 as percentages (mean \pm SE) of the original ten larvae added to each well. Repeated measures
1490 analysis of variance (RM ANOVA) tests, with *post hoc* Tukey tests, were used to assess the
1491 treatment effect (*Hydrolithon*, *Mesophyllum* and FSW) on larval settlement over time. Since
1492 assumptions could not be met despite data transformations, Kruskal-Wallis ANOVAs were
1493 used to assess whether post-settlement success (the amount of larvae which successfully settled
1494 and were alive at the end of the experiment) differed among treatments (*Hydrolithon*,
1495 *Mesophyllum* and FSW) for the two coral species. Bonferroni-adjusted pairwise comparisons
1496 were made following the finding of a significant treatment effect. All statistical tests were
1497 conducted using IBM SPSS v23.

1498

1499 4.4. Results

1500 Both time and treatment had a significant effect on the settlement of *A. austera* and *H. exesa*
1501 larvae but the interaction between time and treatment was not significant in either coral species
1502 (Table 4.1). Settlement in wells with *Hydrolithon* and *Mesophyllum* fragments commenced
1503 within the first two days of the experiment in both coral species but only occurred in FSW 27
1504 and 25 DAF for *A. austera* and *H. exesa* respectively (Fig. 4.2). The settlement in wells with
1505 *Hydrolithon* was rapid during the first 25 DAF for *A. austera* and *H. exesa*, and yielded the
1506 highest settlement ($48.33 \pm 6.42\%$ and $65.00 \pm 5.65\%$ respectively, mean \pm SE, Fig. 4.2, Table
1507 4.2). This was 2.1 and 3.2 times greater than peaks in the *Mesophyllum* and FSW treatments
1508 respectively for *A. austera*, and 1.5 and 1.4 times higher for *H. exesa* (Table 4.2). Overall
1509 settlement of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* larvae in FSW was significantly lower than that in
1510 *Hydrolithon* (Tukey's HSD, $P = 0.002$ and $P < 0.05$ respectively), but not *Mesophyllum*
1511 treatments (Tukey's HSD, $P = 0.159$ and $P = 0.480$ respectively). Settlement of *H. exesa* larvae
1512 in the *Hydrolithon* treatment was significantly greater than that in the *Mesophyllum* treatment
1513 (Tukey's HSD, $P = 0.001$), but this was not the case for *A. austera* larvae (Tukey's HSD, $P =$
1514 0.105). Settlement success did not differ significantly between treatments for both *A. austera*
1515 and *H. exesa* at the end of the experiment (Kruskal-Wallis ANOVA, $H_{2,18} = 1.51$, $P < 0.05$ and
1516 $H_{2,18} = 1.52$, $P > 0.05$ respectively).

1517

1518 **Table 4.1.** Summary of Repeated Measures ANOVA statistics for *Acropora austera* and
 1519 *Hydnophora exesa* planulae settlement in *Hydrolithon*, *Mesophyllum* and filtered seawater
 1520 controls over 92 days ($n = 6$ wells for each treatment).

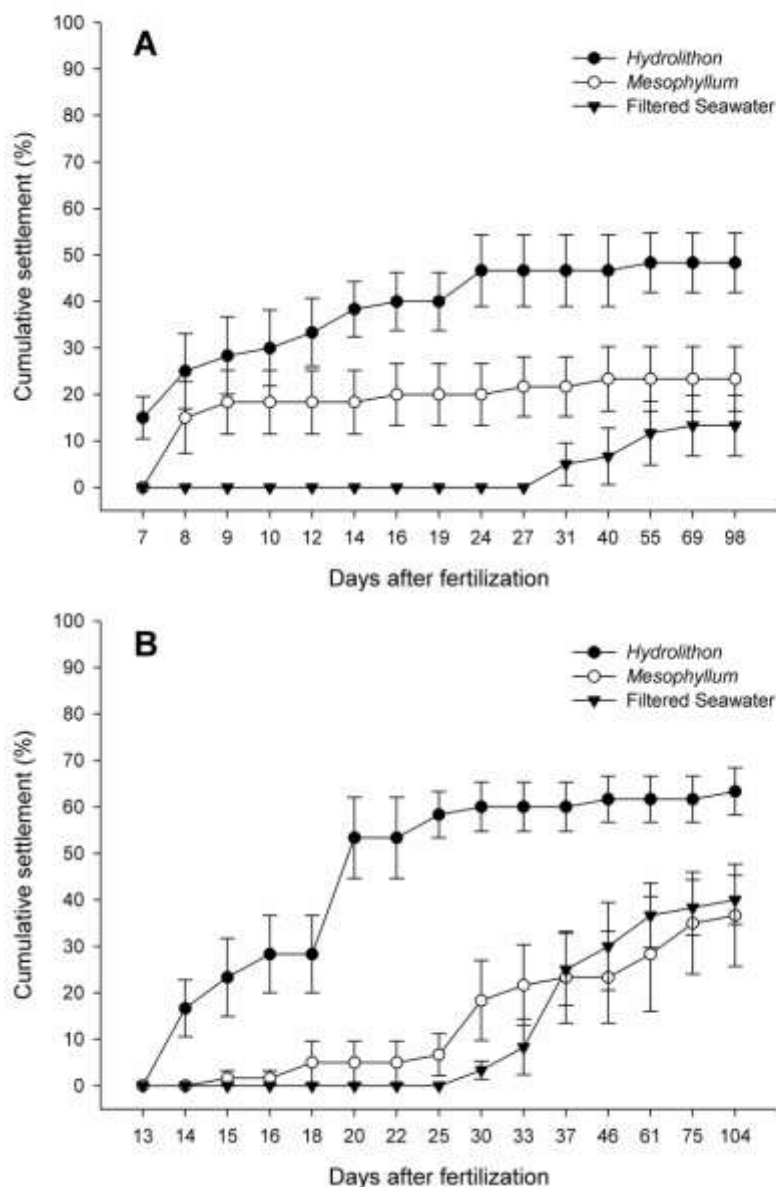
1521

Species	Variability	Source	Df	MS	F	P
<i>Acropora austera</i>	Within subjects	Time	2.085	41.425	9.040	0.001
		Time x Treatment	4.169	9.423	2.056	0.108
		Residual	31.269	4.582		
	Between subjects	Treatment	2.000	267.244	8.574	0.003
		Residual	15.000	31.170		
<i>Hydnophora exesa</i>	Within subjects	Time	2.812	69.937	8.823	<0.001
		Time x Treatment	5.625	9.407	1.187	0.332
		Residual	42.185	7.927		
	Between subjects	Treatment	2.000	321.433	20.436	0.000
		Residual	15.000	15.729		

1522

1523

1524



1525

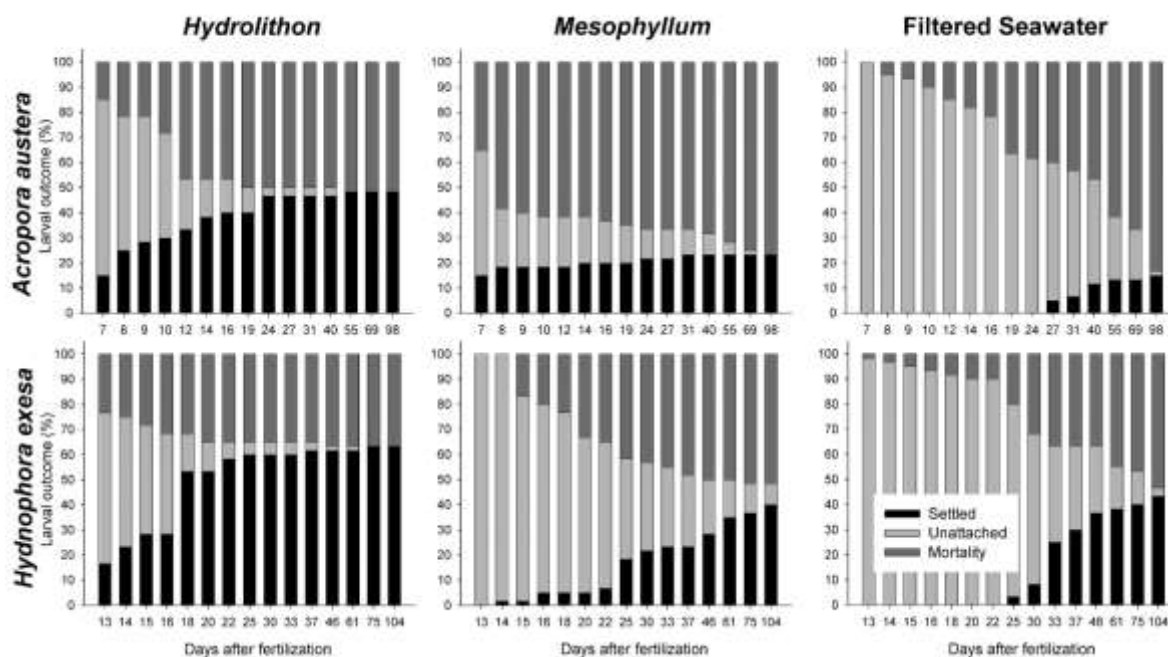
1526 **Fig. 4.2.** Cumulative settlement of coral larvae over time. Mean \pm SE cumulative settlement of
 1527 *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa* larvae in response to *Hydrolithon*, *Mesophyllum* and
 1528 filtered seawater treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment).

1529

1530 In general, larval mortality of both coral species was initially rapid in the CCA treatments
 1531 compared to the FSW controls (Fig.4.3), while after ~ 20 days, very little additional mortality
 1532 occurred. In contrast, mortality of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* planulae in FSW treatments
 1533 remained more consistent throughout the experiment (Fig.4.3). The final mortality was lower
 1534 in *Hydrolithon* treatments for both corals compared to *Mesophyllum* and FSW (Fig. 4.2). A

1535 considerable number of *A. austera* larval mortality ($58.33 \pm 10.91\%$) occurred in the
 1536 *Mesophyllum* treatments between the first two sampling periods, thereby drastically reducing
 1537 the number of larvae available for settlement (Fig.4.3). The majority of larvae in all treatments
 1538 had either settled or died at the end of the experiment (Fig. 4.3).

1539



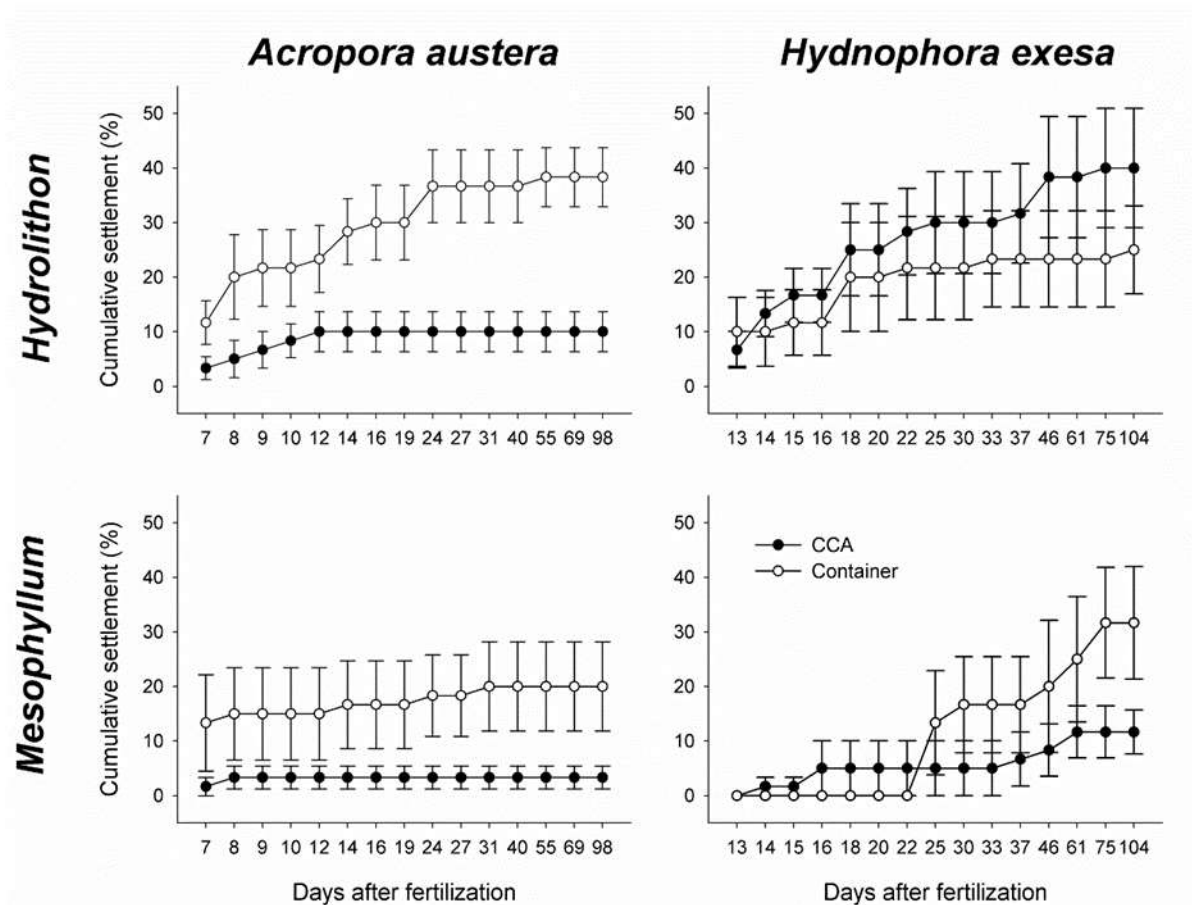
1540

1541

1542 **Fig. 4.3.** Larval outcome throughout the experiment. Mean cumulative contribution of settled
 1543 larvae (black bars), unattached larvae (light grey bars), and larval mortality (dark grey bars) for
 1544 both coral species in the three treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment).

1545

1546 In *A. austera*, settlement occurred predominantly on the well surfaces regardless of CCA
 1547 treatment (Fig. 4.4). In contrast, settlement of *H. exesa* on CCA fragments was dependent on
 1548 the CCA taxon (Fig. 4.4). More settlement of *H. exesa* larvae occurred on *Hydrolithon* than
 1549 well surfaces ($40.00 \pm 10.95\%$ and $25 \pm 8.06\%$ respectively), but not on *Mesophyllum* (11.67
 1550 $\pm 4.01\%$ and $31.67 \pm 10.33\%$ respectively, Fig. 4.4). Larval settlement of both coral species on
 1551 the well surfaces in CCA treatments predominantly occurred on the vertical edges and bottom
 1552 edges and not necessarily under the CCA fragments. The majority of *H. exesa* settlement which
 1553 occurred in the *Mesophyllum* treatment 22 DAF occurred on the well surface (Fig. 4.4).



1554

1555

1556 **Fig. 4.4.** Surface settlement preference of coral larvae in response to CCA treatments. Mean \pm
 1557 SE cumulative settlement of the original ten *Acropora austera* and *Hydnohpora exesa* larvae
 1558 added to each well which settled on the container and CCA surfaces in *Hydrolithon* and
 1559 *Mesophyllum* treatments ($n = 6$ wells per treatment).

1560

1561 A significant difference was found in the number of live compared to dead recruits in the three
 1562 *A. austera* treatments; this was not so for *H. exesa* (Table 4.2). More recruits were alive than
 1563 dead at the end of the experiment in all treatments, except for *A. austera* recruits in the
 1564 *Hydrolithon* treatments, which exhibited higher mortality (Table 4.2).

1565

1566

1567 **Table 4.2.** Overall settlement and post-settlement success in each treatment at the end of the
 1568 experiment for *Acropora austera* and *Hydnophora exesa* (98 and 104 DAF respectively).

Coral species	Treatment	Overall settlement (%)	Post-settlement success (%)
<i>Acropora austera</i>	<i>Hydrolithon</i>	48.33 ± 6.42	20.00 ± 8.50
	<i>Mesophyllum</i>	23.33 ± 6.94	21.67 ± 7.23
	FSW	15.00 ± 7.30	11.66 ± 6.83
<i>Hydnophora exesa</i>	<i>Hydrolithon</i>	65.00 ± 5.65	55.00 ± 10.47
	<i>Mesophyllum</i>	43.33 ± 9.91	38.33 ± 10.12
	FSW	45.00 ± 3.91	45.00 ± 3.91

1569

1570 4.5. Discussion

1571 In accordance with other studies, this investigation has shown that coral settlement can be
 1572 induced by CCA fragments and that the response is coral- and CCA-specific (e.g. Davies SW,
 1573 2014; Denis et al., 2014; Golbuu and Richmond, 2007; Harrington, 2004). Settlement of *A.*
 1574 *austera* and *H. exesa* larvae was significantly enhanced by inclusion of *Hydrolithon* fragments
 1575 in wells, but not *Mesophyllum*. The rate of settlement over time and between treatments was
 1576 variable. The slower settlement rate and moderate settlement success evident in this study
 1577 compared to others (Baird and Morse, 2004; Harrington et al., 2004; Heyward and Negri, 1999)
 1578 may indicate that the larvae were not at peak settlement competency at the start of the
 1579 experiment, experienced greater mortality rates than in other studies, or that the CCA fragments
 1580 were relatively weak inducers.

1581

1582 Both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* can be added to the list of corals in which larval settlement is
 1583 enhanced by *Hydrolithon* or its associated bacteria (Negri et al., 2001). These include *Acropora*
 1584 *palmata*, *A. cervicornis* (Ritson-Williams et al., 2010), *A. willisae*, *A. millepora* (Negri et al.,
 1585 2001), *A. palifera* (Baird and Morse, 2004), *Agaricia humulis* (Raimondi and Morse, 2000),
 1586 *Goniastrea retiformis* and *Stylaraea punctata* (Golbuu and Richmond, 2007). The encrusting
 1587 *Hydrolithon* CCA and associated bacteria (or possibly the coral base on which it was growing,
 1588 or both, appeared to provide a positive settlement cue for the *A. austera* and *H. exesa* larvae.
 1589 Cumulative settlement of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* peaked ~25 DAF in the presence of
 1590 *Hydrolithon*, after which the availability of larvae limited further settlement as the larvae had
 1591 either died or already settled. The insignificant difference between settlement of larvae of both

1592 coral species in FSW and *Mesophyllum* indicates that *Mesophyllum* collected from the exhibit
1593 at uShaka Sea World was not an efficient settlement inducer for larvae of the corals investigated
1594 in this study.

1595

1596 Regardless of CCA treatment, more settlement of both coral species occurred on well surfaces
1597 compared to on CCA fragments, indicating that a chemical cue from the CCA or the associated
1598 microbes is probably responsible for the inducing effect and that attachment to CCA is not
1599 required. The effect of CCA surfaces on coral larval settlement and post-settlement success has
1600 been shown to be hindered by anti-settlement strategies exhibited by CCA (Harrington et al.,
1601 2004) and could have contributed to the preferential settlement on well surfaces. Numerous
1602 studies have shown that enhanced settlement can occur with the addition of CCA chemical
1603 extracts, for example from *Hydrolithon reinboldii* (Dixson et al., 2014). Similarly, water
1604 chemically seeded with macroalgal derivatives has been shown to induce acroporid settlement
1605 (Birrell et al., 2008b; Denis et al., 2014; Dixson et al., 2014; Morse et al., 1996). Heyward and
1606 Negri (1999) found that, although the addition of a variety of CCA taxa (including a
1607 *Mesophyllum* sp.) significantly enhanced settlement of *A. millepora* larvae, all of the settlement
1608 occurred on the well surface, with no settlement occurring on the living surface of the CCA.
1609 The interaction between where larvae settle and the CCA pieces provides insight into potential
1610 competitive interactions that larvae may have to encounter.

1611

1612 Settlement of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* planulae in FSW treatments indicates that the
1613 presence of a CCA settlement cue is not a strict requirement for this to occur in these two coral
1614 species. Although most settlement studies have revealed negligible settlement in seawater
1615 controls (Heyward and Negri, 1999; Tebben et al., 2015), other studies have reported settlement
1616 in seawater control treatments (e.g. Birrell et al., 2008b; Denis et al., 2014; Mason et al., 2011).
1617 It has been proposed that settlement in seawater controls without CCA occurs because of the
1618 presence of amino acids and other small water-borne molecules (Baird and Morse, 2004).
1619 Settlement in FSW controls only commenced 27 DAF in *A. austera* and 25 DAF in *H. exesa*,
1620 despite larvae of both species being competent to settle from the start of the experiment.
1621 Interestingly, this coincided with the time at which cumulative settlement of both corals peaked
1622 in the *Hydrolithon* treatment. In the absence of the required settlement cues, coral planulae can
1623 remain unattached for several weeks (Baird et al., 2009; Graham et al., 2008). Delayed
1624 settlement in this study suggests that the larvae may have reached a point where planulae either

1625 settled non-selectively or died due to a depletion of energy reserves (see Toonen and Pawlik,
1626 2001). Alternatively, despite the fact that 67% of the water was changed every 2-3 days, a
1627 microbial build-up on the well surfaces over time could have provided a settlement-inducing
1628 cue (Vermeij et al., 2009). *Acropora austera* not only took longer to start settling in FSW
1629 treatments, but also only attained a mean settlement of 10% in this medium. In contrast,
1630 settlement of *H. exesa* planulae in FSW attained a mean of 40%. Elsewhere, 63% of *A. muricata*
1631 larvae (Denis et al., 2014) and 37% of *A. millepora* larvae (Birrell et al., 2008b) settled in
1632 seawater controls after 24 hours. The cumulative settlement of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* in
1633 FSW in the terminal stages of this study shows that the maximum settlement competency of *A.*
1634 *austera* and *H. exesa* exceeds 69 and 75 DAF respectively. Elsewhere, the maximum settlement
1635 competency of *A. digitifera* and *A. tenuis* occurs at 54 and 69 DAF respectively (Nishikawa
1636 and Sakai, 2005), and 93-105 DAF in *Platygyra daedalea* (Nozawa and Harrison, 2000).
1637 Therefore, both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* have potential for long distance dispersal. However,
1638 recent genetic work has revealed that *A. austera* incur high levels of self-seeding on
1639 Maputaland reefs (Montoya-Maya et al., 2016). Collectively this supports the premise that
1640 although coral larvae possess the potential for long distance dispersal, rapid settlement occurs
1641 resulting in high levels of local retention (Miller and Mundy, 2003). Determining the minimum
1642 time to competency of the two coral species in future studies is required. Furthermore, the
1643 assessment of microbial build-up on the well surfaces, and coral larvae energetics over time
1644 warrants investigation to provide explanations for trends obtained in this study.

1645

1646 As in this study, high levels of coral larval mortality have been found to occur during the early
1647 larval phases (Nozawa and Okubo, 2011) with a steady increase in mortality from 3-12 days
1648 (Denis et al., 2014). Higher mortality of larvae was observed in CCA treatments compared to
1649 FSW during the first month of this experiment. This could potentially be due to defence
1650 mechanisms of CCA due to handling prior to the start of the experiment. Although chemical
1651 cues associated with CCA are known to induce the settlement of coral larvae, CCA use
1652 chemical defences to prevent fouling and their potential allelopathic effect on coral larvae has
1653 received little attention (Kim et al., 2004; Suzuki et al., 1998). A bacterial load resulting from
1654 dying larvae could also have affected the water quality within the wells (Denis et al., 2014).

1655

1656 Although settlement of *A. austera* was greatest in *Hydrolithon*, more than half of the *A. austera*
1657 planulae which settled in this treatment were dead at the end of the experiment. In contrast, the

1658 majority of the *A. austera* recruits in the *Mesophyllum* and FSW treatments were still alive.
1659 Therefore settlement does not necessarily translate into post-settlement success. *Hydrolithon*
1660 has been shown to outcompete coral juveniles elsewhere (Golbuu and Richmond, 2007),
1661 however competitive overgrowth was not observed during this study and therefore did not
1662 contribute to the high *A. austera* post-settlement mortality. The majority of the settlement
1663 (79%) occurred on the well surfaces, out of contact with the CCA. In contrast, 51% of *H. exesa*
1664 settlement occurred on well surfaces and the majority of *H. exesa* recruits in all three treatments
1665 remained alive at the end of the experiment. Collectively, this indicates that the post-settlement
1666 success of planulae differs between the two coral species in the presence of *Hydrolithon*
1667 fragments. However, caution must be applied to the interpretation of post-settlement success
1668 results in this study, as recruits were ‘of different ages’ (settlement records were cumulative)
1669 when the experiment was terminated and the probability of recruit survival can change with
1670 age (Raymundo and Maypa, 2004). Post-settlement success of settled recruits in this laboratory
1671 study probably constituted over-estimates as many natural pressures (e.g. predation and
1672 competition with other biota) were absent (Arnold et al., 2010; Doropoulos et al., 2016; Penin
1673 et al., 2011; Tebben et al., 2014), which can result in as much as 55% of settled larvae dying
1674 within the first 24 hours on a reef (Martinez and Abelson, 2013).

1675
1676 The assessment of larval outcomes over a prolonged duration in this study provided valuable
1677 insight into the effect that treatments can have on the survival of larvae, their settlement, and
1678 post-settlement success. The maladaptive tendency of *A. austera* in the *Hydrolithon* treatment
1679 (i.e. enhanced settlement but reduced post-settlement success) indicates that, as found
1680 elsewhere (e.g. Nugues and Szmant, 2006), enhanced settlement does not necessarily translate
1681 into high recruitment success. While the identification of larval settlement inducers provides
1682 an important contribution to the recruitment puzzle in corals, experimental work which
1683 incorporates both settlement and post-settlement success are recommended in further studies
1684 to investigate potential bottleneck affects. The use of individual, isolated larvae is
1685 recommended in future studies to eliminate the possible confounding effect that the status of
1686 other larvae can have on larval settlement (e.g. fouling of the water by dead larvae). The
1687 isolation of more CCAs and their assessment on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa are
1688 required to establish whether there are other CCA taxa that may also influence coral settlement.
1689

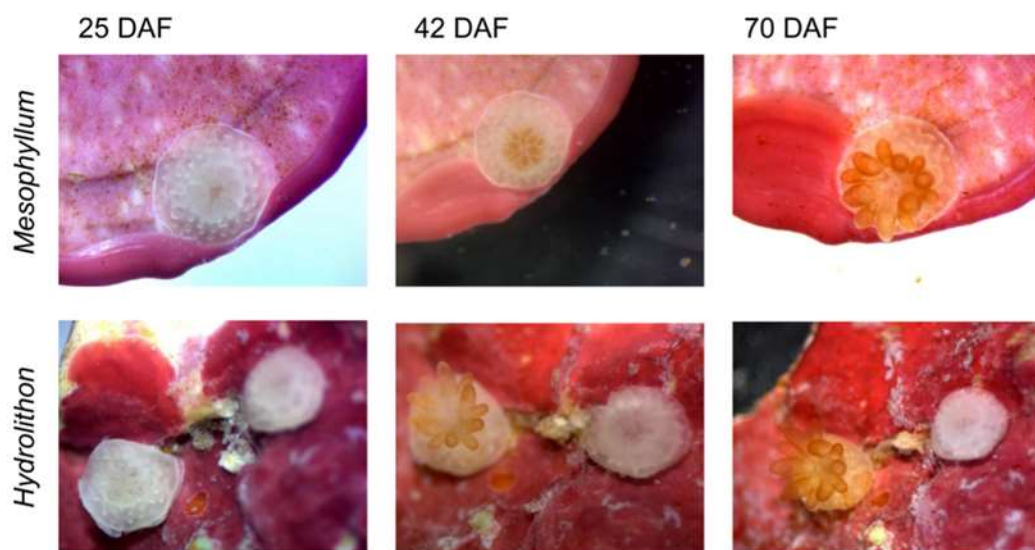
1690 **4.6. Acknowledgements**

1691 D. Pearton, L. Hart, M. Jordaan and F. Hart are thanked for their assistance with gamete
1692 collection, fertilisation and larval rearing in the laboratory. Logistical support was provided by
1693 S. Laing, C. Floros, D. Pearton, and S. Porter and the Mazda Wildlife Fund sponsored a vehicle.
1694 iSimangaliso Wetland Park staff is thanked for facilitating this study and the three reviewers
1695 are thanked for improving the manuscript.

1696

1697

1698 4.7. Supplementary data



1699

1700 **Fig. S4.1.** *Acropora austera* recruit survival on *Mesophyllum* and *Hydrolithon* fragments

1701

1702

1703 **Chapter 5:**

1704 **Recruitment of scleractinian corals on a high-latitude reef in South Africa:** 1705 **Micro-spatial patterns and the effect of caging**

1706 **5.1. Abstract**

1707 The location where coral larvae settle has a profound influence on the fate of coral propagules.
1708 Once settled, resulting coral recruits are required to withstand conditions experienced at their
1709 attachment site. As a result, settlement of coral planulae is a selective process and spatial
1710 patterns of recruitment are governed by pre- and post-settlement processes. Here we assessed
1711 how coral recruitment (density and spatial settlement patterns) varied on settlement tiles,
1712 according to different attachment orientations (wide gap, narrow gap, and raised tiles) on
1713 concrete structures. Tiles were attached for six months onto a marginal, high-latitude reef in
1714 South Africa. The effect that herbivores and predators had on coral recruitment and the
1715 associated benthic community was also assessed with the use of exclusion cages. Recruitment
1716 was dominated by pocilloporids, regardless of study site and experimental treatment. The
1717 majority of settlement occurred on the vertical edges of tiles, regardless of treatment with a
1718 greater propensity to settle closer to the edges on the top surface of tiles than towards the centre.
1719 The majority (74.17%) of recruitment on the top surface of tiles occurred in the grooves,
1720 regardless of study site and tile treatment. Mean recruit densities differed significantly between
1721 tile treatments. Raised tiles and tiles with a wide gap between their edge and the concrete Y-
1722 frame received two- and three- fold more recruits than that of tiles with a narrow gap (644.33
1723 ± 149.43 and 979.29 ± 170.88 recruits m^{-2} respectively vs 311.05 ± 80.82 recruits m^{-2}).
1724 Additionally, when herbivores and predators were excluded, a two-fold reduction in
1725 recruitment occurred. The results confirm that the surface texture on settlement tiles plays an
1726 important role in the micro-spatial settlement pattern of corals, while orientation and caging
1727 settlement tiles do not. Both coral recruitment density and the benthic community on settlement
1728 tiles differed between tile treatments, but recruit density and the benthic community were not
1729 correlated. Comparably more macroalgae and crustose coralline algae cover occurred on
1730 uncaged tiles. This suggests that factors other than benthic community structure and herbivore
1731 pressure are drivers of coral recruitment on these reefs. Coral recruitment was highest at the
1732 northern (deepest) study site, regardless of settlement surface used. Together, the results

1733 indicate that coral recruitment on a high-latitude reef in South Africa is heterogeneous at both
1734 the broad (study site) and narrow (settlement surface) spatial scale.

1735

1736 **5.2. Introduction**

1737 The spatial dynamics of coral communities are largely determined by factors influencing larval
1738 dispersal, settlement and post-settlement survival (Brazeau et al., 2011). For corals to
1739 successfully recruit, larvae need to find a suitable surface on which they can settle, outcompete
1740 surrounding biota, and avoid being predated upon during post-settlement growth. Coral
1741 recruitment involves both allelopathic and physical competitive dynamics in which corals are
1742 typically weak competitors. This results in demographic bottlenecks due to significantly high
1743 levels of post-settlement mortality (Vermeij and Sandin, 2008), which is particularly prevalent
1744 within the first 24 hours of settlement (Martinez and Abelson, 2013). The probability of
1745 survival increases as recruits grow bigger (Doropoulos et al., 2015; Raymundo and Maypa,
1746 2004).

1747

1748 *5.2.1. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles*

1749 Space is a limited resource in coral reef benthic communities (Eynaud et al., 2016).
1750 Microhabitats which facilitate coral settlement and post-settlement survival are thus vital as
1751 they enable the maintenance of coral-dominated communities (Harrison and Wallace, 1990;
1752 Hughes et al., 1999) and affect mature population abundance and distribution (Vermeij and
1753 Sandin, 2008). Coral larvae respond to a variety of abiotic and biotic stimuli to select their
1754 settlement location (Arnold et al., 2010; Baird et al., 2003; Gleason et al., 2009; Golbuu and
1755 Richmond, 2007; Harrington et al., 2004; Heyward and Negri, 1999; Morse et al., 1996; Mundy
1756 and Babcock, 1998a; Richmond, 1997; Vermeij et al., 2010). Influential abiotic parameters
1757 include light availability (Maida et al., 1994), sound (Vermeij et al., 2010), hydrodynamics
1758 (Abelson et al., 1994), surface composition (Benayahu and Loya, 1984; Burt et al., 2009; Field
1759 et al., 2007; Green et al., 2010; Harriott and Fisk, 1987; Lee et al., 2009), colour (Mason et al.,
1760 2011), and surface micro-topography (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016; Carleton and Sammarco,
1761 1987; Whalan et al., 2015). While some conditions (e.g. light and nutrients) may be more
1762 favourable for coral growth, these also favour species such as algae which have a competitive
1763 edge through rapid growth (Birkeland, 1977). Thus, recruit survival increases where these

1764 conditions are less favourable for competitive species and enable them to reach size-escape
1765 threshold before being overgrown (Birkeland, 1977).

1766

1767 Previously, the spatial pattern of coral recruitment on horizontally attached settlement tiles on
1768 a high-latitude reef in South Africa yielded negligible recruitment on the vertical edges
1769 (Glassom et al., 2006). In contrast, Hart (2012) found that recruitment occurred predominantly
1770 on the vertical edges of tiles horizontally attached within recessed grooves on concrete
1771 anchoring structures on the same reef. It was hypothesized that the contrasting spatial pattern
1772 resulted from the edge microhabitat provided by the recess created by a 5 mm gap between the
1773 vertical edges of tiles and the juxtaposed concrete frame (Hart, 2012). Consequently, a new,
1774 grooved settlement tile was designed and manufactured from resin (Appendix 3) with the aim
1775 of increasing coral recruitment on a grooved top surface of tiles. Settlement surfaces are made
1776 more appealing by creating micro-crevices on the tile surface (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016;
1777 Nozawa, 2008; Nozawa, 2012a; Nozawa et al., 2011; Petersen et al., 2004; Tebben et al., 2014;
1778 Whalan et al., 2015), or in the way that the tiles are attached, e.g. inclining them to avoid
1779 sediment entrapment (English et al., 1997), or by raising them off the substratum to create a
1780 gap below their under-surface (Maida et al., 1994).

1781

1782 *5.2.2. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion*

1783 Cracks and grooves provide refuge for recruits and support more diverse algal communities
1784 (Arnold and Steneck, 2011; Brandl and Bellwood, 2016), as predation and competition are
1785 lower in these microhabitats than on exposed surfaces (Bak and Engel, 1979; Carleton and
1786 Sammarco, 1987). Animals which may predate on coral recruits include, but are not limited to,
1787 fireworms (Wolf and Nugues, 2012), urchins (O’Leary et al., 2013), and various fish (Penin et
1788 al., 2011). Herbivores play an instrumental role in maintaining coral dominance and reef
1789 resilience by restricting algal growth and by providing clean substrata suitable for coral
1790 settlement and crustose coralline algae (CCA) colonization (Arnold et al., 2010; Belliveau and
1791 Paul, 2002). Certain species of CCA induce coral settlement (Harrington et al., 2004; Morse et
1792 al., 1996; Webster et al., 2004), consolidate reefs and create favourable settlement habitats
1793 which can promote post-settlement success (Harrington et al., 2004; Vermeij et al., 2006). CCA
1794 also suppresses macroalgae (Vermeij et al., 2011), which may inhibit and outcompete coral
1795 recruits (Arnold et al., 2010; Birrell et al., 2008b; McCook et al., 2001). Controlling competing
1796 biota on settlement tiles can also have a significant effect on the micro-spatial settlement and

1797 post-settlement survival of recruits (Tebben et al., 2014). However, herbivory can also result
1798 in the mortality of recruits through accidental removal (Penin et al., 2011; Penin et al., 2010).
1799 High coral recruit mortality has also been observed in exclusion treatments, but was attributed
1800 to sedimentation and algal competition in the absences of herbivores and predators (Penin et
1801 al., 2011). This highlights the dynamic interactions at play in terms of coral recruit settlement
1802 survival and the surrounding biota.

1803
1804 While coral reproduction (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998) and spatial-temporal recruitment
1805 dynamics (Glassom et al., 2006; Hart, 2012; Massé, 2014) have been assessed previously on
1806 the high-latitude reefs in South Africa, indicating that coral communities are reproductively
1807 active and attain comparable recruitment rates to their tropical counterparts, the effect that
1808 predators and herbivores have on the early ontogeny of corals on these reefs remains to be
1809 explored. Furthermore, the colonization of benthic organisms on settlement tiles, which coral
1810 recruits must inevitably compete with, remains to be investigated. The aims of this study were
1811 thus to: 1. Assess the spatial distribution of scleractinian coral recruitment on settlement tiles
1812 according to their orientation on concrete structures; 2. determine whether the density of coral
1813 recruitment and the benthic community structure differed on settlement tiles according to their
1814 orientation on concrete structures; and 3. to assess whether the exclusion of herbivores and
1815 predators from settlement tiles had a significant effect on the density of coral recruitment and
1816 benthic community structure on settlement tiles. Coral recruits were defined in this study as a
1817 ‘detectable corals’ on settlement surfaces.

1818

1819 **5.3. Materials and methods**

1820 *5.3.1. Study location and design*

1821 This study was conducted at three study sites (Table S5.1) located at 11 m, 12 m, and 17 m
1822 (southern, central and northern respectively) on Two-mile Reef (TMR: 27°33’28”S;
1823 32°41’10”E), a high-latitude reef within the iSimangaliso Wetland Park, South Africa. The
1824 high-latitude reefs within the Park constitute the southernmost coral-dominated reefs along the
1825 African coastline, yet provide habitat for a diverse assemblage of hard and soft corals on ancient
1826 fossilized sandstone (see Chapter 2 for further details).

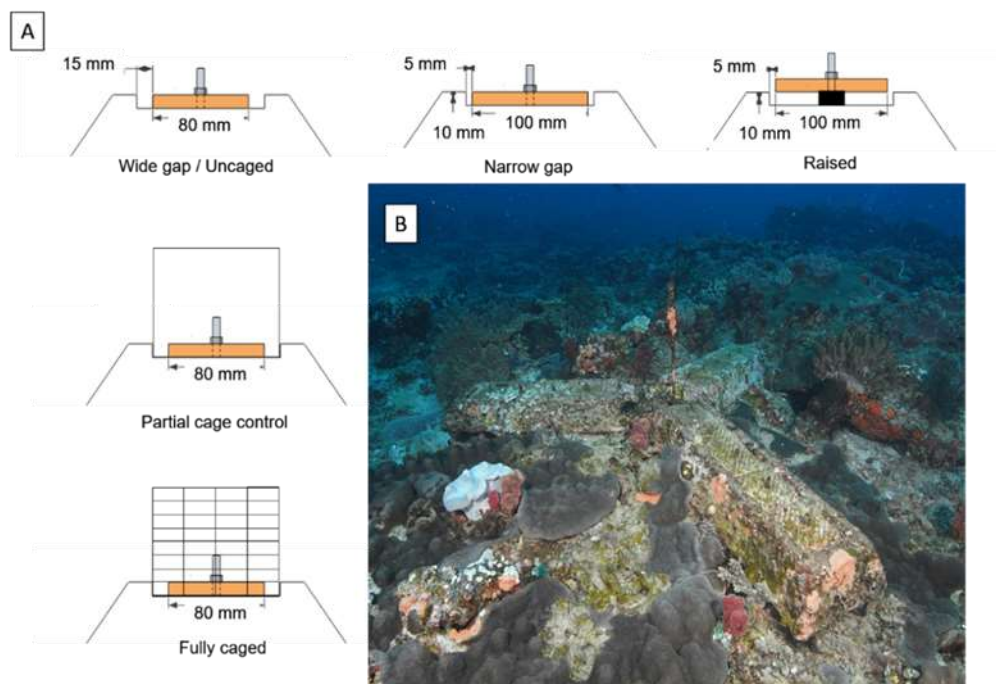
1827

1828 Logistical and environmental considerations played a role in selecting the method of
1829 attachment of settlement surfaces in this study. While the direct attachment of individual
1830 settlement tiles to the reef substratum is desirable (as per Mundy 2000), this was not feasible
1831 as previous attempts to drill into the reef, which consists of aeolianite base rock, proved futile
1832 (Schleyer pers. comm.). Concrete Y-frames were thus designed to maximize stability and to
1833 withstand the high energy environment (Figure 5.1B). The edges of the concrete structures
1834 were chamfered at 60 degrees and the top was recessed so that the upper surface of settlement
1835 tiles was flush with the top of the concrete structure. Three replicate concrete Y-frames were
1836 installed at each study site in 2012 and were situated 5-10 m apart of each other at each study
1837 site.

1838
1839 Custom-designed resin settlement tiles made from polyurethane resin (AXSON Fastcast F16)
1840 with calcareous sand filler were used in this study (Appendix 3). The tiles had inclined grooves
1841 5 mm wide and 3 mm deep, spaced 7 mm apart on their top surface and were of two sizes; 10
1842 x 10 x 1 cm and 8 x 8 x 1 cm (Fig. 5.1A). The tiles had a rough surface and were centre-drilled,
1843 with horizontal attachment to concrete Y-frames (Fig. 5.1B).

1844
1845 Forty-five settlement tiles were attached parallel to the substratum to three of the
1846 aforementioned concrete Y-frames (Fig 5.1B). Each Y-frame arm contained a randomly
1847 attached tile for each of the five treatments (see section 5.3.2 - 5.3.4 below), resulting in three
1848 tiles per treatment on a Y-frame (Fig. 5.1.B). Results from the nine tiles of each treatment were
1849 pooled for each study site. Each treatment thus had a total sample size of 27 settlement tiles.
1850 Settlement tiles were 'soaked' for six months (Oct 2014-Apr 2015), encompassing the peak
1851 recruitment period on this reef (Glassom et al., 2006; Hart, 2012). The three aims of the study
1852 were investigated concurrently. The investigations and their associated tile treatments are
1853 detailed below.

1854



1855

1856

1857

1858 **Fig. 5.1.** Tile treatments applied in this study (A), and illustration of a concrete Y-frame used
 1859 for settlement tile attachment (B). A 10 mm PVC spacer was used to raise settlement tiles out
 1860 of the recessed groove on the top surface of Y-frames.

1861

1862 On recovery, settlement tiles were gently removed from the Y-frames and carefully transported
 1863 to the Oceanographic Research Institute (ORI) research aquarium (29°52'06"S; 31°02'39"E)
 1864 in a transport container filled with aerated seawater. The tiles were placed on skewers, with
 1865 spacers in between to prevent them from touching. The skewers were placed in perforated
 1866 cylinders in the transport container, thereby limiting tile corner damage during transit.
 1867 Settlement tiles were then maintained in a flow-through aquarium system at ORI (Fig. S.5.1).
 1868 Tiles were photographed with a Sea and Sea DX-1G camera and CPCe 4.1 software (Kohler
 1869 and Gill, 2006), which employs point intercept technology, to quantify the percentage cover of
 1870 crustose coralline algae (CCA); encrusting macroalgae (EMA); erect foliose algae (EFA); turf
 1871 algae and sediment (TS); encrusting bryozoans (EB); bare substratum (B); and other (OT).
 1872 Sediment was frequently trapped between turf algae filaments; therefore these two categories
 1873 were combined. A standardized number of points per unit area (two points per cm²) were
 1874 overlaid on each edge surface, ensuring equal sampling effort on the surfaces of the two tile
 1875 sizes.

1876

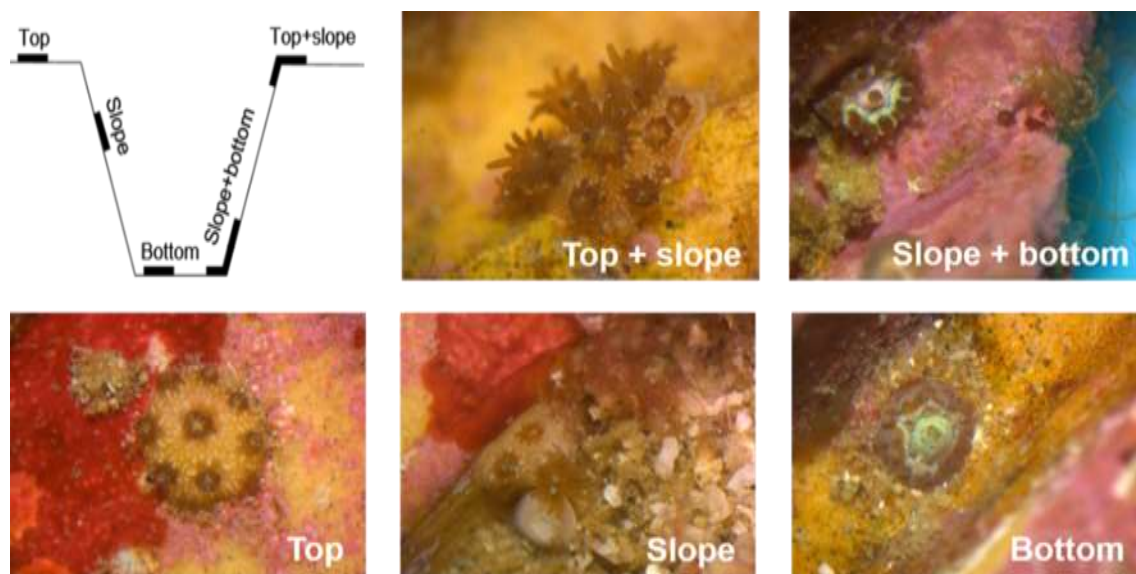
1877 After the settlement tiles were photographed, the four vertical edges, top surface, and underside
1878 of raised tiles were examined under a Zeiss Stemi DV4 stereo-microscope with the aid of a
1879 NightSea Blue Star fluorescent torch and barrier filter in a dark laboratory (Fig. S.5.2). The use
1880 of fluorescence assists with the detection of fluorescent recruits which may have settled in a
1881 cryptic location (e.g. Baird et al., 2006; Hsu et al., 2014; Piniak et al., 2005). Since not all living
1882 recruits exhibit fluorescence (Martinez and Abelson, 2013), or may be obscured by algae or
1883 sediment, tiles were re-analysed under the microscope with white light by gently brushing the
1884 tiles with a fine paint brush to detect additional non-fluorescing recruits. This was also done to
1885 confirm fluorescent detections were indeed scleractinian corals. Tiles were then placed in
1886 household bleach for 72 hours, rinsed, dried and re-analysed. Recruits detected using the three
1887 methods were tallied. The identity of recruits was determined based on their bleached skeletal
1888 structure according to Babcock et al. (2003) and allocated to either the Pocilloporidae,
1889 Acroporidae, Poritidae or an 'Other' category (see Appendix 4). Three recruits had severely
1890 damaged skeletons and were included in the 'Other' category. Any new recruits which were
1891 only detected during post-bleaching analysis were assumed to have been dead at the time of
1892 bleaching. Thus, recruitment success reported here could be underestimates of absolute
1893 survival. Each recruit's spatial position on a tile was referenced with a Vernier calliper.
1894 Settlement on the under surface of raised tiles was negligible and was excluded from
1895 subsequent analyses.

1896

1897 *5.3.2. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles*

1898 A digitized, two-dimensional tile screen was created using ArcMap (v9.2, ESRI) and the
1899 surface of 10 x 10 x 1 and 8 x 8 x 1 cm tiles were divided into six and five, one centimetre wide
1900 concentric grids respectively (from the vertical edge to the centre of the top surface of tiles).
1901 The proportion of recruits in each grid was calculated by counting recruits with Hawth's Tools
1902 (H. Beyer, Hawth's Analysis Tools for ArcGIS, available at
1903 <http://www.spatial ecology.com/htools>) and divided by the total count of recruits on each tile.
1904 Results from the smaller 8 x 8 x 1 cm tiles were excluded from the statistical analyses to enable
1905 direct comparisons between tile types of the two sizes. The settlement location of recruits on
1906 the horizontal top surface of grooved tiles was assessed to determine what features of the
1907 grooved surface attracted the most recruitment (Fig. 5.2).

1908



1909

1910

1911 **Fig. 5.2.** Settlement location categories on the grooved top surface of tiles with representative
 1912 images of a coral recruit in each category.

1913

1914 Three of the five tile treatments listed in section 5.3.1 above were assessed for the effect of
 1915 edge microhabitat (Fig. 5.1A). Tile treatments included: recessed tiles (10 x 10 cm) with a
 1916 narrow 5 mm gap between their edge and the concrete Y-frame (NG); tiles (8 x 8 cm) similarly
 1917 recessed but with a wider, 15 mm gap (WG); and 10 x 10 cm tiles raised 1 cm above the Y-
 1918 frame with a spacer (RA). This resulted in three replicates of each treatment per Y-frame, nine
 1919 per study site and a total of 27 from the three study sites. Only recruitment, and benthic
 1920 community structure on the left and right vertical edges of tiles were considered in this
 1921 experiment as they were the only edges that were juxtaposed to the concrete edge on the Y-
 1922 frames which formed the edge microhabitat under investigation. One tile from each treatment
 1923 was excluded from analysis as these had no recruits.

1924

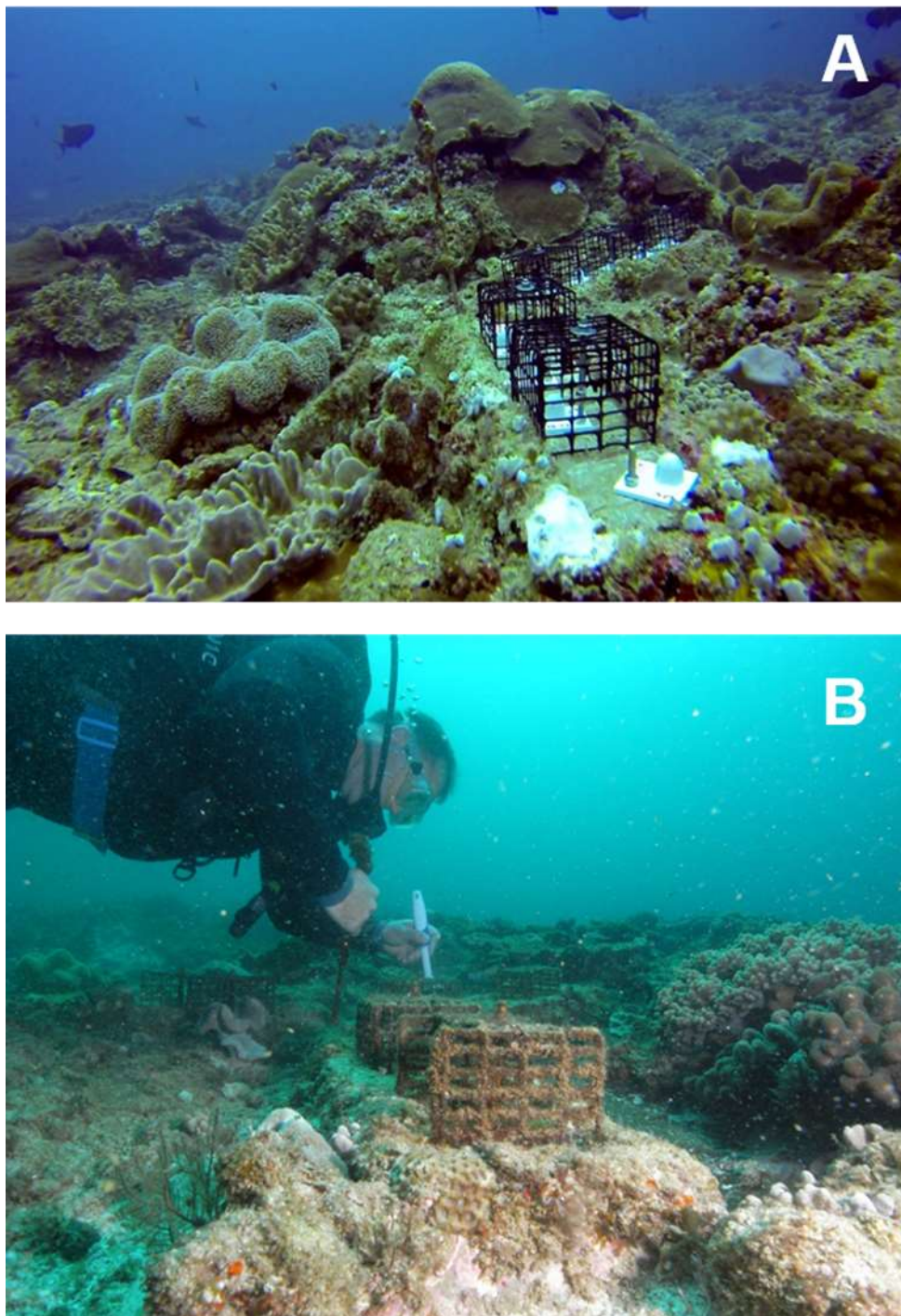
1925 5.3.3. *Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion*

1926 Results from fully-caged (FC), partially-caged controls (PC) and uncaged (UC) grooved, 8 x 8
 1927 x 1 cm tiles were employed to investigate the effect of predation on scleractinian recruitment
 1928 and benthic cover (Fig. 5.1A). A 2 mm thick galvanized mesh with apertures of 23 mm x 10
 1929 mm was used to construct full and partial cages (10 x 10 x 8 cm, L x W x H), which were dip-
 1930 coated in plasti-dip (Plasti-Dip International, Blaine, MN, USA) to prevent corrosion. Partial
 1931 cages consisted of two sides connected across the top by a 50 mm wide strip for attachment

1932 onto the tile securing studs. A pilot study was conducted in which five replicate pairs of clod
1933 cards (Jokiel and Morrissey, 1993) were fully caged or uncaged for 24 hours at the shallowest
1934 study site (subjected to the most water movement) (Fig 5.3). The dissolution rates of the clod
1935 cards inside cages did not differ significantly from uncaged cards (Paired T-test: $P > 0.05$) and
1936 the cages were thus assumed to have a negligible effect on water flow, permitting comparisons
1937 between the FC and UC data. The benthic community structure on the four edges and top
1938 surface of the FC, PC and UC tiles was quantified from images taken of each tile.

1939

1940



1941

1942 **Fig. 5.3.** Pilot experiment with replicate clod cards attached within and outside full exclusion
1943 cages (A) and monthly cleaning of cages during the six-month experiment (B).

1944

1945 5.3.4. Data analysis

1946 Statistical tests were undertaken using PRIMER v6 with the PERMANOVA extension
1947 (Anderson et al., 2008). Tile treatments and study sites were considered fixed factors in all
1948 analyses. PERMANOVA tests with 9,999 permutations based on Euclidean distance
1949 (Anderson, 2001) were used to 1) assess the spatial pattern of recruitment in the five settlement
1950 tile treatments and 2) assess if coral recruit density (number of corals per m² surface area)
1951 differed between the edges of NG, WG and RA tiles, and between FC and UC tiles.
1952 PERMANOVA tests based on the Bray-Curtis similarity matrix were also used to assess
1953 whether the benthic community structure on tiles differed significantly in the latter tests. The
1954 assumption of homogeneity of dispersion in all PERMANOVA analyses was tested with the
1955 PERMDISP function and, if this could not be satisfied with transformation, the raw data were
1956 used with a conservative cut-off value of 0.01 (Underwood, 1997). Due to low sample size,
1957 there was a risk of type II error. Pairwise Mann-Whitney U tests were performed to identify
1958 different groups when significant differences were found. Coral recruit density and benthic
1959 community structure were correlated on tiles considering the effect of edge microhabitat and
1960 herbivore and predator exclusion using Spearman's Rank Correlations with the RELATE
1961 function in PRIMER.

1962

1963 5.4. Results

1964 5.4.1 Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles

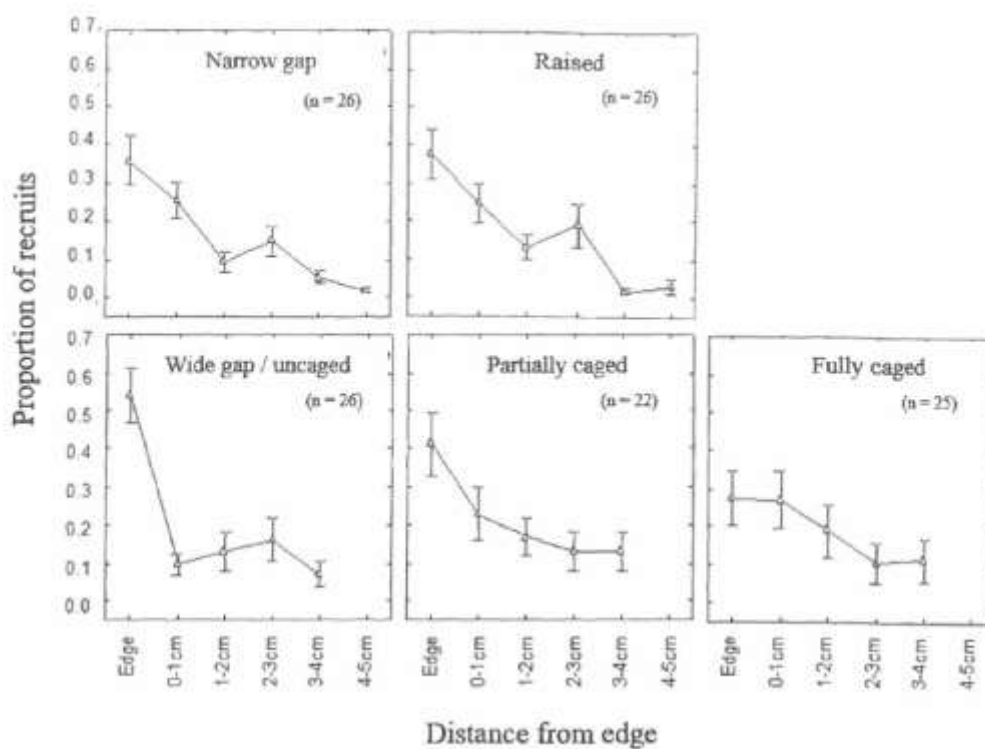
1965 Overall, the distribution in settlement differed significantly on the tiles (PERMANOVA, $df =$
1966 4, $P = 0.001$), with significant grid x tile treatment and grid x study site interactions
1967 (PERMANOVA, $df = 20$, $P = 0.001$ and $df = 8$, $P = 0.001$ respectively). The majority of
1968 settlement occurred on the vertical edges of tiles, regardless of treatment and study site with a
1969 greater propensity to settle closer to the edges on the top surface of tiles than towards the centre
1970 (Fig 5.4). WG tiles had significantly less recruits 0-1cm from the edge on the top surface of
1971 tiles compared to NG tiles ($t = 2.887$, $P = 0.013$), but did not differ significantly between any
1972 of the other zones. RA tiles had similar proportions of recruits in each of the grids. FC tiles had
1973 a significantly lower proportion of recruits on the edge of tiles ($t = 2.586$, $P = 0.009$) but
1974 significantly more recruits 0-1 cm from the edge on the top surface compared to UC tiles ($t =$
1975 2.133, $P = 0.034$). The proportion of recruits in grids on FC and UC tiles did not differ

1976 significantly. The greater proportion of recruitment on the vertical edges of tiles did not differ
 1977 significantly between study sites (Fig. 5.5), regardless of tile treatment (Fig. 5.4).

1978

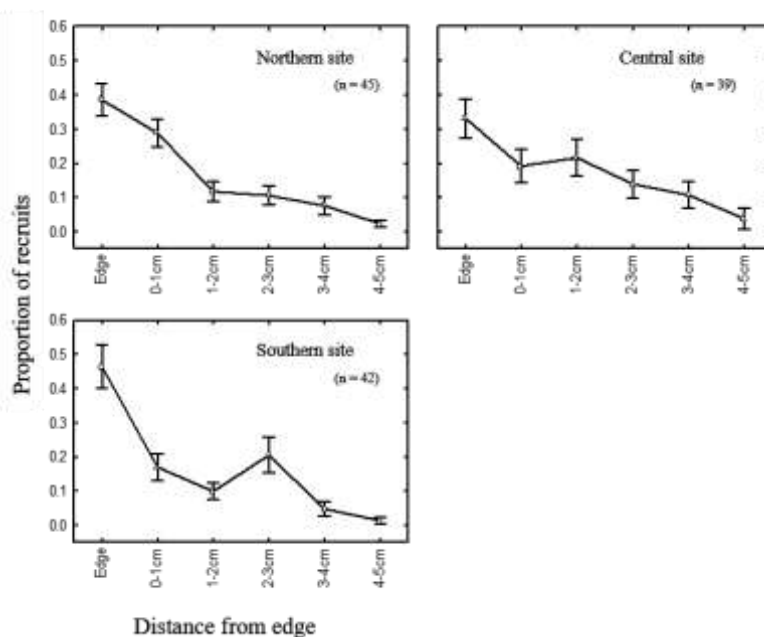
1979 On average, the majority (74.17%) of recruitment on the top surface of grooved tiles occurred
 1980 on the inclined slopes within grooves, with recruitment on the remaining surfaces contributing
 1981 <10% to the total recruitment (Table 5.1). Most recruitment occurred in the grooves, regardless
 1982 of study site and tile treatment (Table 5.1). Although the majority of acroporids settled on the
 1983 slope in the grooves on the top surface of tiles, a large proportion (22.2%) was found on the
 1984 combined slope/bottom edge.

1985



1986

1987 **Fig. 5.4.** Mean \pm SE proportion of coral recruitment in the six tile zones. (n = number of tiles
 1988 included in the analyses, i.e. those with at least one recruit).



1989

1990 **Fig. 5.5.** Mean \pm SE proportion of coral recruitment in the six tile zones (all treatments
 1991 combined) at the different study sites on Two-mile Reef (n = number of tiles with recruits).

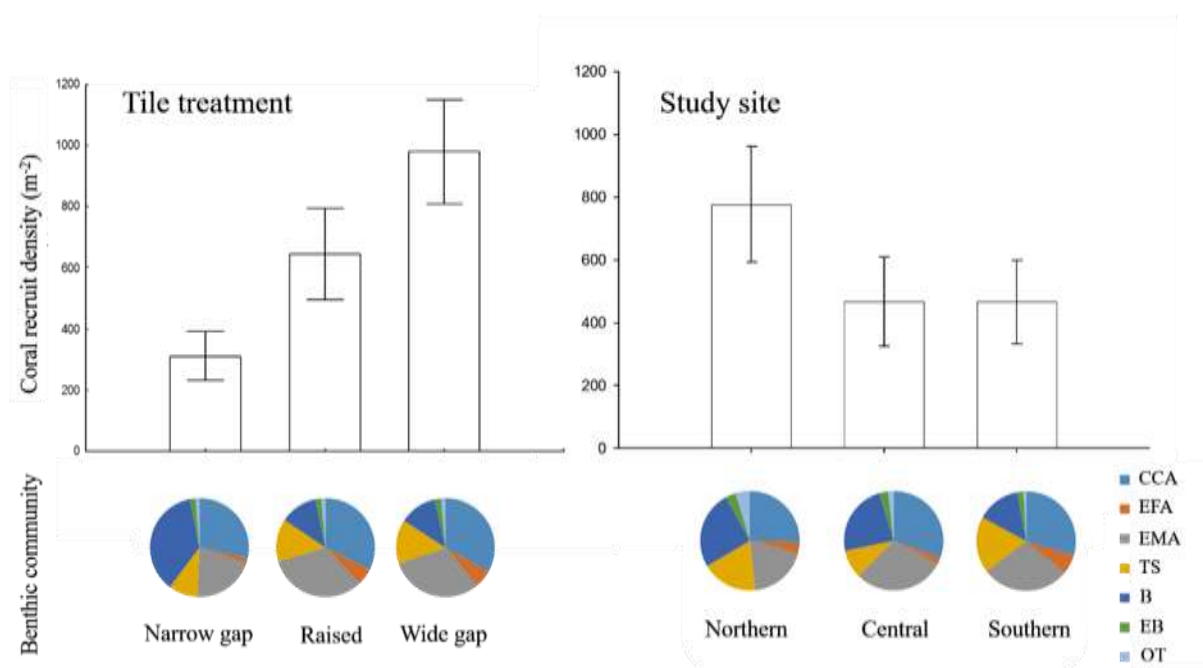
1992

1993 **Table 5.1.** Proportional coral recruit distribution (%) on the top surface of grooved tiles. The
 1994 overall mean is the average percentage of each surface category, regardless of study site, tile
 1995 treatment or coral taxa (See Fig. S5.2 for illustrations of each category).

1996

		Bottom	Slope	Slope+bottom	Top	Top+slope	<i>n</i>
Study	Northern	6.87	79.39	0.76	7.63	5.34	131
Sites	Central	7.41	79.63	5.56	5.56	1.85	54
	Southern	2.50	78.75	8.75	10.00	0.00	80
Tile	Narrow gap	7.55	78.30	2.83	8.49	2.83	106
Treatment	Raised	4.85	80.58	1.94	8.74	3.88	103
	Wide gap/uncaged	3.57	78.57	10.71	5.36	1.79	56
	Fully caged	5.71	74.29	5.71	8.57	5.71	35
Coral	Pocilloporidae	2.63	77.89	5.79	8.95	4.74	190
Taxa	Other	6.80	74.81	8.40	9.16	0.83	131
	Acroporidae	5.56	61.11	22.22	5.56	5.56	18
	Poritidae	0.00	100.00	0.00	0.00	0.00	5
	Overall mean	4.79	74.17	9.24	8.96	2.84	

1997 Coral recruit density was greatest on WG tiles followed by RA tiles and NG tiles ($979.29 \pm$
 1998 170.88 , 644.33 ± 149.43 , and 311.05 ± 80.82 recruits m^{-2} respectively, Fig. 5.6). Mean recruit
 1999 densities differed significantly between tile treatments, but not study sites nor the interaction
 2000 between factors (PERMANOVA, $df = 2$, $P = 0.003$; $df = 2$, $P = 0.066$ and $df = 4$, $P = 0.202$
 2001 respectively). The mean density on NG tiles was significantly lower than that on RA and WE
 2002 tiles ($t = 2.023$, $P = 0.044$ and $t = 3.648$, $P = 0.001$ respectively). RA and WG tiles were not
 2003 significantly different ($t = 1.535$, $P = 0.131$). A significant difference was found in the benthic
 2004 community composition between the three treatments, study sites and the interaction of
 2005 treatment x study site (PERMANOVA, $df = 2$, $P = 0.008$; $df = 2$, $P = 0.001$ and $df = 4$, $P =$
 2006 0.018). Pairwise comparisons indicated that benthic community composition on NG tiles was
 2007 significantly different from both RA tiles and WE tiles ($t = 2.751$, $P = 0.025$ and $t = 2.451$, P
 2008 $= 0.032$) and was significantly different between all three study sites (northern vs central: $P =$
 2009 0.015 , northern vs southern: $P = 0.002$ and central vs southern: $P = 0.003$). However, the
 2010 patterns of recruit density on tiles was not significantly correlated to benthic community
 2011 structure (Spearman Rank Correlation: $r = 0.037$, $P = 0.221$).
 2012

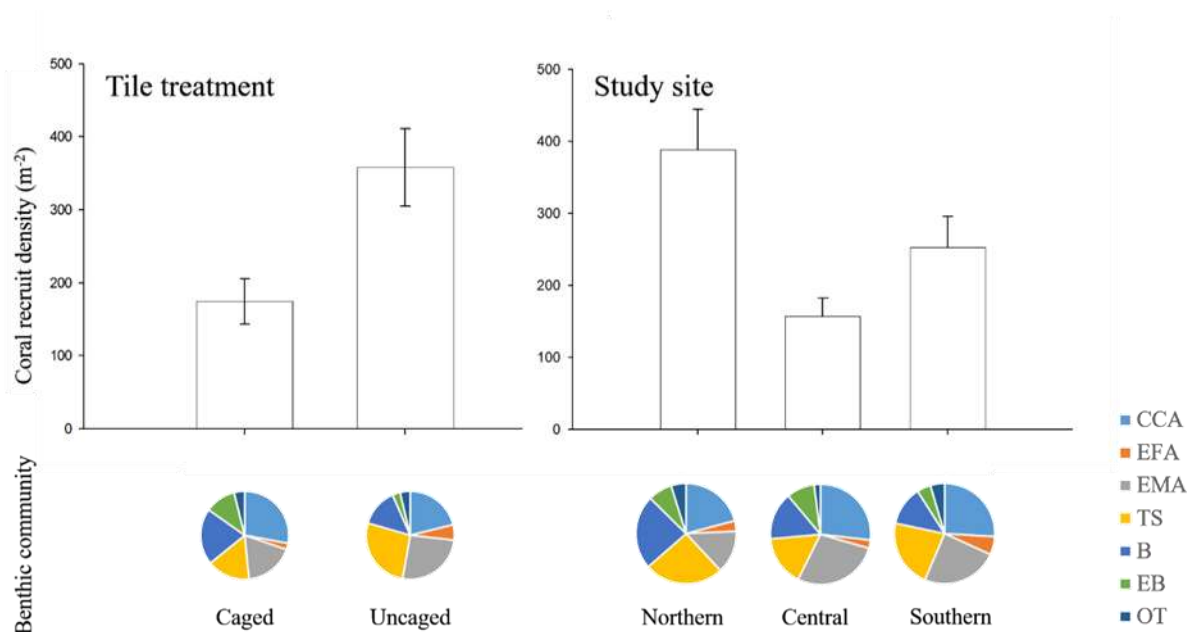


2013
 2014 **Fig. 5.6.** Mean \pm SE recruit density and benthic cover on settlement surfaces used to assess the
 2015 effect of edge microhabitat. CCA = crustose coralline algae; EFA = erect foliose algae; EMA
 2016 = encrusting macroalgae; TS = turf and sediment; B = bare substrata; EB = encrusting
 2017 bryozoans; OT = other ($n = 27$ tiles per treatment and per study site).

2018 5.4.2. *Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion*

2019 In total 60 recruits were found on FC tiles, 73 on PC tiles and 123 recruits on UC tiles (Table
 2020 5.2). Five PC and two FC tiles had no recruits on them. A significant difference was found
 2021 between the overall density of recruits on FC and UC tiles (PERMANOVA, $df = 1$, $P = 0.002$;
 2022 Fig. 5.7) and between study sites (PERMANOVA, $df = 2$, $P = 0.004$; Fig. 5.7), but not the
 2023 interaction between treatment and study site (PERMANOVA, $df = 2$, $P = 0.069$). Benthic
 2024 community differed between FC and UC treatments ($t = 0.036$, $P < 0.001$). The benthic
 2025 community at the northern study site was significantly different from that at the central and
 2026 southern study sites ($t = 2.278$, $P = 0.001$ and $t = 2.014$, $P = 0.005$), but the density of recruits
 2027 at the central and southern sites were not significantly different from each other ($t = 1.199$, P
 2028 $= 0.218$; Fig. 5.7). Coral recruit density was not significantly correlated to benthic community
 2029 structure (Spearman Rank Correlation: $r = 0.067$ $P = 0.147$).

2030



2031

2032

2033 **Fig. 5.7.** Mean \pm SE recruit density and benthic cover on settlement surfaces used to assess the
 2034 effect of herbivore and predator exclusion. CCA = crustose coralline algae; EFA = erect foliose
 2035 algae; EMA = Encrusting macroalgae; TS = turf and sediment; B = bare substrata; EB =
 2036 encrusting bryozoans; OT = other ($n = 27$ tiles per treatment and per study site).

2037 **5.5. Discussion**

2038 *5.5.1. Spatial pattern of recruitment on settlement tiles*

2039 The dominant coral genera (Acroporidae and Pocilloporidae) which settled in this study are
2040 branching corals, which generally have lower survival than massive species (Tamelander,
2041 2002). Acroporids constituted a small proportion of recruits (34 of 579 recruits in total). Post-
2042 settlement mortality of coral recruits is traditionally high (Martinez and Abelson, 2013) and
2043 can differ markedly between coral taxa (Doropoulos et al., 2015). In addition to its effects on
2044 recruitment rates, surface texture has been shown to influence the survival of coral recruits
2045 (Doropoulos et al., 2016; Nozawa, 2010), the most effective size of refugia for coral survival
2046 being ca. ≤ 10 mm wide and ≥ 2 mm deep (Nozawa, 2012a). Recruit survival has been found
2047 to be significantly greater on gridded surfaces of 2.5 cm (which experience lower grazing
2048 intensity) compared to larger grid sizes of 4 and 8 cm (Suzuki et al., 2011). Both the grooves
2049 on the tiles surfaces, and the gap-edge habitats of NG and WG tiles used in this study, fall
2050 within the size range of refuges effective for coral recruitment.

2051
2052 Heterogeneous patterns of coral recruitment may be due to differential supply and selection of
2053 coral larvae during settlement, or post-settlement mortality processes which vary between
2054 different locations on settlement tiles (Doropoulos et al., 2016). The overall heterogeneous
2055 pattern of recruitment between study sites and across settlement tiles found here corroborates
2056 results in other studies (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016; Maida et al., 1994; Petersen et al., 2004;
2057 Tebben et al., 2014). As per Glassom (2006), significantly greater recruitment was observed at
2058 ~ 18 m, compared to the shallower 12 m study site on TMR. Shallower sites can experience
2059 greater turbulence, while light becomes limiting as depth increases. Coral recruits grow faster
2060 on upper surfaces of settlement tiles and on shallower reefs where there is increased
2061 competition from fouling biota, while survival of recruits is greater on shaded vertical and
2062 under sides of tiles and increases with reef depth up to 20 m (Birkeland, 1977). At Sodwana
2063 Bay, coral cover reduces from depths beyond 18 m (Hart pers. obs.), with colonies being sparse
2064 at 27 m (Schleyer, 1999). Intermediate depths could therefore favour higher recruitment rates
2065 on these reefs (Roth and Knowlton, 2009). Negligible recruitment was observed on the
2066 underside of RA tiles in this study. Recruitment predominantly occurs on the under surface of
2067 raised settlement tiles in the tropics and at shallow study sites (Adjeroud et al., 2007; Arnold
2068 et al., 2010; Maida et al., 1994; Nzali et al., 1998; Vermeij, 2006). This is due to a trade-off
2069 between the need for light as well as sufficient water movement and refuge from predators and

2070 benthic competitors (see Baird and Hughes, 1996; Bak and Engel, 1979; Carleton and
2071 Sammarco, 1987; Mundy, 2000). A reduction in light from the edge of tiles towards the centre
2072 on their under surface results in a tendency for coral recruitment to be greatest towards the
2073 periphery (Maida et al., 1994). In contrast, recruitment is generally greater on the top surface
2074 of tiles where light becomes limiting e.g. at greater depths (Bak and Engel, 1979) and at high
2075 latitudes (Glassom et al., 2006). We found no significant difference in the proportion of recruits
2076 on the vertical edges of tiles between study sites which differed in depth (11 - 17m). Thus the
2077 reduction in light at the deepest study site was not sufficient to limit recruitment on the edges
2078 of tiles. This is corroborated by Birkeland (1977) who only found a significant shift in the
2079 proportion of recruits on the vertical edges versus the horizontal top surface at depths greater
2080 than 20 m.

2081
2082 Settlement on the top surface of tiles attached horizontally to the substratum may also be
2083 compromised by high sediment loads which inhibit coral settlement (Birrell et al., 2005) and
2084 are detrimental to the their post-settlement survival (Jones et al., 2015). This results in higher
2085 levels of recruitment on vertical edges than the horizontal top surface (dela Cruz and Harrison,
2086 2017; Goh and Lee, 2008; Rogers et al., 1984; Tomascik, 1991). Results in this study
2087 corroborate this, as recruitment was greatest on the vertical edges and inclined edges within
2088 grooves on the top surface of the settlement tiles (which in themselves constitute a narrow
2089 edge). Micro-crevices and larger gap microhabitats have been proven to be preferential for
2090 coral recruitment on reefs elsewhere (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016; Doropoulos et al., 2016;
2091 O'Leary and Potts, 2011). This could be due to reduced water flow (Abelson and Denny, 1997;
2092 Boxshall, 2000) and entrainment of larvae (Abelson and Denny, 1997). The grooved tile design
2093 used in this study provided a structurally complex surface. The lower abundance of recruits at
2094 the bottom of grooves is probably due to high sediment loads, which are partially re-suspended
2095 during strong surges (Hart pers. obs.). Although no riverine sediment input occurs on Sodwana
2096 Bay reefs, considerable sediment deposition ($1721 \text{ g m}^{-2} \text{ day}^{-1}$) has been recorded due to
2097 bioclastic sediment re-suspension associated with turbulence at the study sites (Grimmer,
2098 2011). There are only a few studies which have described the distribution of recruitment on the
2099 top surface of tiles. In general, more recruits settled closer to the perimeter on the top surface
2100 of tiles in this study. Similarly, Glassom et al. (2006) found that the majority of settlement on
2101 the top surface of flat, 12 x 12 x 1 cm ceramic tiles occurred within 20 mm of the perimeter. If
2102 there is a preference for corals to settle on tile edges, increasing the ratio of the perimeter of

2103 settlement tiles to their area would influence the number of recruits (Field et al., 2007). In
2104 contrast, recruitment would increase uniformly as the area of the tiles increased if homogenous
2105 recruitment occurred (Field et al., 2007). Thus, care should be taken when comparing
2106 settlement rates between studies where recruitment is heterogeneous and different sized
2107 settlement tiles have been used.

2108

2109 WG tiles recruited the greatest density of coral larvae, followed by RA tiles and lastly NG tiles.
2110 It is predicted that sediment loads could also have contributed to the low levels of coral
2111 recruitment on edges of NG tiles, which is substantiated by the considerable bare surface on
2112 the edges of NG tiles that likely resulted from sediment loads precluding biota growth.
2113 Although WG tiles were attached in recessed grooves, less sedimentation was observed and
2114 this possibly resulted from flow dynamics differing at the edges of NG and WG tiles (Abelson
2115 and Denny, 1997; Hata et al., 2017). In addition, enhanced light at the edges of WG and RA
2116 tiles could have provided more preferential conditions for settlement compared to NG tiles
2117 (Mundy and Babcock, 1998a). Light intensity has been shown to significantly affect the spatial
2118 pattern of coral larvae elsewhere (Lewis, 1974; Maida et al., 1994; Mundy and Babcock, 1998a;
2119 Strader et al., 2015). This too could explain why RA tiles received greater recruitment than NG
2120 tiles, but less recruitment than WG tiles which probably experienced greater levels of larval
2121 retention within vortices in the gap depression.

2122

2123 Elsewhere, recruitment studies which have utilized different attachment methods within the
2124 same temporal and spatial scales have yielded results that conflict with those obtained in this
2125 study (Abelson et al., 2005; Glassom et al., 2004). Previously, Glassom et al. (2006) found that,
2126 at Sodwana Bay, recruitment on flat ceramic settlement tiles attached horizontally to the
2127 substrata on steel frames was greatest on the horizontal top surface (67.8%), with only 0.8%
2128 occurring on vertical edges. However, their devices were elevated some centimetres off the
2129 reef. Nevertheless, their results contrasts with those of Hart (2011) in which the majority of
2130 recruitment (82%) occurred on vertical edges of flat tiles attached to the recessed concrete
2131 structures used in this study. These differences are probably attributable to the different
2132 conditions (e.g. hydrodynamics) associated with the two attachment techniques. Other studies
2133 have yielded no significant difference in coral recruitment on settlement surfaces, whether
2134 attached directly to the substratum or on tile racks (Field et al., 2007; Mundy, 2000). However

2135 the racks used by Field et al. (2007) and Mundy (2000) had no gap habitats such as those on
2136 the concrete structures in this study.

2137

2138 *5.5.2. Effect of herbivore and predator exclusion*

2139 Caging of settlement tiles significantly reduced the density of recruitment. As the density of
2140 recruits on PC tiles did not differ significantly from UC tiles, it is unlikely that the cage design
2141 had a confounding effect on settlement. Greater spat densities have been found elsewhere in
2142 well-grazed areas compared to exclusion areas (Arnold et al., 2010). Herbivores have long been
2143 recognized to play a key role in the resilience of coral reef ecosystems (Hughes et al., 2007),
2144 as coral settlement has been shown to be inhibited by macroalgae (Kuffner et al., 2006),
2145 sediment, turf algae and other biota such as bivalves and sponges (Vermeij, 2006). The effect
2146 of herbivory is dependent on the functional group of herbivores present. Croppers regulate algal
2147 turfs in refuges by removing the upper sections of algae, while detritivores reduce both algae
2148 and particulate matter on flat surfaces through scraping (Brandl and Bellwood, 2016; Edmunds
2149 et al., 2014). These algae can smother coral recruits; however, intensive grazing can also result
2150 in significant recruit mortality due to ‘accidental’ predation (Baria et al., 2010; Penin et al.,
2151 2011). Thus, a balance must be reached whereby the benefits of grazing out-weigh the costs of
2152 coral mortality (Penin et al., 2011).

2153

2154 Recruitment success did not differ significantly between FC, PC and UC tiles. As found in
2155 previous recruitment studies on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa (Glassom et al., 2006;
2156 Hart, 2012; Massé, 2014), pocilloporids dominated recruit composition. However, in the
2157 tropics pocilloporid recruit mortality is greatest on exposed surfaces, compared to caged
2158 surfaces (Doropoulos et al., 2016). Their high numbers in this study may be attributable to the
2159 protection provided by the gaps and micro-crevices on the surface of the tiles. While small gaps
2160 of 2-3 mm (Harriott and Fisk, 1987; Petersen et al., 2004) have been found to favour coral
2161 settlement, larger gaps of 12-30 mm have also proven favourable as they deter large predators
2162 and grazers, but still allow a free flow of water and light penetration (Maida et al., 1994;
2163 O’Leary and Potts, 2011). Indeed, light has been proposed to be more influential for the
2164 settlement success of coral larvae than the avoidance of predation (Maida et al., 1994).

2165

2166 The benthic community assessment conducted in this study identified the key benthic
2167 categories found on recruitment tiles, which recruits will probably have to interact or compete

2168 with during their early ontogeny. A significant difference between benthic communities on
2169 different tile treatments and study sites was found in this study. As with coral recruitment,
2170 variations in light and hydro-dynamics could have influenced the resulting benthic community
2171 structure on different tile treatments. The lack of correlation between recruit density and
2172 benthic community structure obtained in this study may be due to the fact that pocilloporids
2173 tend to be non-selective of their settlement habitat (Baird and Hughes, 2000; Harrison and
2174 Wallace, 1990). Other studies have also shown that settlement of coral larvae in a reef
2175 environment is not significantly correlated with the benthic community structure on settlement
2176 tiles (Field et al., 2007; Glassom et al., 2004). This could be due to the scale at which the
2177 benthic community is assessed as fine scale assessments may highlight significant trends that
2178 could be masked at broader scales. Additionally, selective preferences may only be evident
2179 when settlement surfaces become limiting or larval densities are high. Although certain
2180 functional groups such as CCA facilitate coral settlement (Morse et al., 1988; Raimondi and
2181 Morse, 2000; Chapter 4), the inducing effect of CCA can differ between both coral and CCA
2182 species (Harrington et al., 2004; Chapter 4). High CCA cover could constitute ‘pre-empted
2183 space’ and not necessarily translate into areas available for coral settlement. However,
2184 increased levels of settlement may occur in the presence of CCA but not directly on its surface
2185 (Chapter 4). The interaction zones associated with CCA provide an environment that is not
2186 hypoxic and has non-pathogenic microbes, in contrast to other biota such as algae (Barott et
2187 al., 2012). CCA cover increases as the number of grazers increase as they remove competitive
2188 algae (O’Leary and McClanahan, 2010). Elevated grazing pressure on reefs results in benthic
2189 communities with high CCA cover and less heterotrophic invertebrates and fleshy algae, which
2190 in turn benefits coral recruitment (Hughes et al., 2007; Mumby et al., 2015; Smith et al., 2010).
2191 However, the greater algal cover and lower CCA on the uncaged settlement tiles suggests that
2192 grazing pressure occurs at reduced levels on TMR. While a fish community study conducted
2193 on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa has identified *Acanthurus nigrofuscus* as the most
2194 abundant grazer on TMR (Floros, 2010), the effect of herbivores on the benthic community
2195 needs investigation. Urchins also play a pivotal role as herbivores on reefs elsewhere (Davies
2196 et al., 2013; Korzen et al., 2011; O’Leary et al., 2013) and their dynamics on the high-latitude
2197 reefs of South Africa also needs to be assessed. However, their role in controlling benthic
2198 structure is anticipated to be less than fishes due to their low abundance (Hart pers. obs.).
2199

2200 *Lobophora variagata*, was found to be the dominant algal colonizer on artificial settlement
2201 surfaces in the present study. Corals compete with macroalgae for space on reefs and the growth
2202 and survival of their recruits. The outcome of these competitive interactions are species-
2203 specific and an increase in macroalgal biomass can occur in the event of herbivore exclusion
2204 (Lirman, 2001). In addition to pre-emption of space, macroalgae can reduce coral recruitment
2205 through allelopathy (Birrell et al., 2008b; Denis et al., 2014; Dixson et al., 2014; Doropoulos
2206 et al., 2014). Turf algae and sediment also contributed prominently to benthic cover in this
2207 study. As a functional group, turf algae are commonly considered inhibitors of coral settlement
2208 and their effect may differ according to turf algae assemblage and their sediment-trapping
2209 capacity (Birrell et al., 2005). Additionally, the bacterial community associated with turf algae
2210 can result in increased pathogenicity (Barott et al., 2012).

2211

2212 In conclusion, further experimental work on the competitive interactions between coral
2213 recruits, herbivores and benthic biota will provide valuable information on the bottlenecks in
2214 the early life history stages of corals on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa. There was an
2215 overall heterogeneous pattern of coral recruitment on the study reefs and it is recommended
2216 that future studies consider tile type, attachment technique, and tile size; particularly for
2217 comparisons between studies. For example, when vertical edges of tiles cannot be assessed *in*
2218 *situ*, the use of grooved tiles is recommended as these generally result in more recruitment
2219 occurring on their top surfaces. This will facilitate more efficient *in situ* assessment of coral
2220 recruitment (e.g. fluorescent detection techniques, Baird et al., 2006; Mazel, 2005).

2221




2222 **5.6. Acknowledgements**

2223 Thanks go to Mike Gower from Mike Gower Engineering and Neels Koekemoor for the
2224 creation of the HDPE template used to cast the silicon moulds for the production of the resin
2225 tiles. Funding was supplied by the Applied Centre Earth System Science and the South African
2226 Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR). The Mazda Wildlife Fund sponsored
2227 a vehicle which was used during this study. Colleagues in the Reef Biodiversity programme at
2228 the Oceanographic Research Institute are thanked for their assistance with field sampling and
2229 iSimangaliso Wetland Park authorities for facilitating this study.

2230 **5.7. Supplementary data**

2231 **Table S5.1.** Description of environmental conditions at the three study sites.

2232

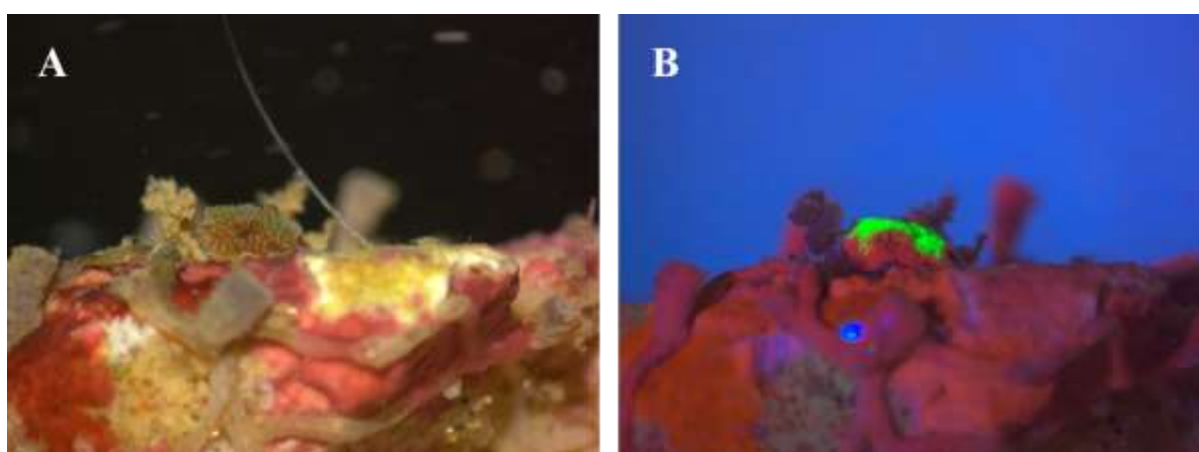
Factor	Northern site	Central site	Southern site
Depth	17m	12m	11m
Rugosity	Relatively flat with few gullies	Spur and groove formation around a stand of <i>A. austera</i> , more gullies than northern site	Variable topography with sharp drop offs into sand gullies
Water flow	Low – laminar	Medium-high surge	High surge
Representative image			

2233



2234
2235
2236
2237
2238
2239

Fig. S5.1. Temporary housing of settlement tiles in a flow-through aquarium for three days during pre-bleaching microscopic analysis.



2240
2241
2242
2243
2244

Fig. S5.2. Representation images of a scleractinian coral recruit that was detected during pre-bleaching with fluorescence (A) and a comparative image taken under white light (B) illustrating the benefit of using fluorescence during pre-bleaching.

2245 **Chapter 6:**

2246 **Final discussion and conclusions**

2247

2248 Our understanding of coral reproduction and recruitment has progressed in the past two
2249 decades, but detailed assessments on specific aspects of the early life stages of corals are limited
2250 to certain geographic locations and taxa. Consequently, extending our research efforts to
2251 incorporate less studied locations and taxa will add to our global understanding of these vital
2252 life stages. Furthermore, elucidation of bottlenecks which limit the quantity of gametes
2253 produced and their successful recruitment is needed for application in coral reef restoration
2254 work (Guest et al., 2013). This is becoming ever more urgent in light of the damage that has
2255 been incurred on many reefs around the world, with more than a third of hard coral species
2256 facing an elevated risk of extinction (Carpenter et al., 2008). Investigations of such ecological
2257 processes are essential, and can be used to predict the future responses of reefs to environmental
2258 change (Lam et al., 2017). Settlement studies further contribute to restoration and captive
2259 breeding projects as they enable genetically diverse individuals to be cultured and the
2260 vulnerable early life stages to be monitored to maximise survival. Thereafter recruits can be
2261 transplanted into protected microhabitats to increase survival rates in the field. However,
2262 limited resources and logistical challenges often impede multifaceted studies investigating
2263 different life history stages of corals. For example, night dives were not feasible in this study
2264 due to safety concerns. Consequently, it combined *in situ* and *ex situ* experimental research to
2265 assess aspects associated with the fertilisation, settlement and recruitment success of
2266 scleractinian corals on a high-latitude reef in South Africa.

2267

2268 This study contributes to the growing list of research which has reported sexual activity in
2269 corals at or near their latitudinal limit (see Baird et al., 2015; Harii et al., 2001; Harrison, 2008;
2270 Nozawa et al., 2006; St Gelais et al., 2016b; van Woesik, 1995; Wilson and Harrison, 1997;
2271 Wilson and Harrison, 2003). *Ex situ* spawning of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* colonies was
2272 observed after the March 2015 full moon in this study. This, in conjunction with other coral
2273 reproductive research (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998; Massé, 2014; Schleyer et al., 1997),
2274 illustrated that corals on South African high-latitude reefs spawn predominantly earlier in the
2275 year, over two to three months when water temperatures are close to their annual maxima.
2276 Spawning of corals frequently occurs over a 2-3 month period elsewhere (Baird et al., 2015),

2277 often during warmer months (Harrison and Wallace, 1990), including high-latitude locations
2278 such as Lord Howe island in Australia (Baird et al., 2015) and Kochi in Japan (Nozawa, 2012b).

2279

2280 *In situ* observations and reproductive assessments of other taxa will further elucidate spawning
2281 trends on South African reefs. Determining the precise date and time of gamete release can be
2282 extremely beneficial as it enables various aspects of the early life stages of corals to be assessed
2283 (e.g. fertilisation success, dispersal, effect of environmental conditions on the early life stages
2284 etc.). Knowing when gametes are released can be used in management to limit potential
2285 anthropogenic effects which may be detrimental to the survival of offspring e.g. boat traffic
2286 could result in oil pollution and thereby affect reproductive success (Loya and Rinkevich, 1980;
2287 Negri et al., 2016).

2288

2289 Synchrony in the reproductive seasonality of the broader coral community needs further
2290 assessment on the high-latitude reefs in South Africa. However, multi-specific broadcast
2291 spawning is anticipated to occur here, as found in most speciose coral communities (Baird et
2292 al., 2009). The identification of the timing of spawning of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* in this study
2293 not only enabled aspects associated with their fertilisation and larval settlement to be
2294 investigated, but will be of use in the event that their propagation is required for reef
2295 rehabilitation if this is ever needed. In such cases, this could be accomplished by active
2296 restoration with the seeding of new offspring. This may be done by sexual reproduction
2297 employing selective breeding for resilience (van Oppen et al., 2015) or asexual propagation
2298 (Page et al., 2018) which is becoming more common in an attempt to save coral reefs. Drastic
2299 approaches such as cryopreservation techniques are even being developed in an attempt to save
2300 genotypes of corals before they go extinct (Hagedorn and Carter, 2016)

2301

2302 Not all corals are anticipated to respond to environmental changes in the same way, as varying
2303 life history strategies affect their tolerance and recovery potential. Although *A. austera* and *H.*
2304 *exesa* both follow the same reproductive strategy of broadcast spawning, this study has shown
2305 that the fertilisation and early life stages of these corals can differ significantly. The
2306 Maputaland reefs comprise the southern distributional limit for *A. austera* along the African
2307 coast. A paucity of reefs and high turbidity south of Maputaland probably limits their
2308 distribution to higher latitudes, along with other coral taxa. Coral communities found further
2309 south consist mainly of pocilloporids and other hardy corals such as faviids, with only a few

2310 resilient *Acropora* species. The southernmost documented record of *H. exesa* is on Aliwal
2311 Shoal (Olbers et al., 2009), which is situated ~300 km south of Maputaland. The current
2312 distribution of the two coral taxa considered here provides an indication of their different
2313 ‘tolerance’ and ability to survive in a marginal environment. No records of *H. exesa* have been
2314 documented between these two locations and it is therefore plausible that the reefs along the
2315 Maputaland coastline could be the larval source for the southern location. The fast-flowing
2316 Agulhas Current would facilitate their transport, as well as the loss of coral larvae to reef-less
2317 areas further south after spawning (Morris, 2009).

2318

2319 Despite the fact that coral eggs and embryos are positively buoyant and have the capacity for
2320 large-scale dispersal, many manifest a trend of localised retention (Ayre and Hughes, 2000;
2321 Miller and Mundy, 2003; Montoya-Maya, 2014). Furthermore the dispersal of corals and the
2322 resulting connectivity of coral reefs is predicted to be influenced by climate change, as an
2323 increase in water temperature has been shown to significantly increase the development rate of
2324 coral larvae and reduce the time required before larvae can settle (Figueiredo et al., 2014).

2325

2326 **6.1. Research Findings**

2327 Four key questions were targeted at the beginning of the study:

2328

- 2329 1. Do sperm concentration and salinity affect the fertilisation success of representative
2330 corals, *A. austera* and *H. exesa*?

2331

2332 The fertilisation success of coral gametes at the water surface following broadcast spawning is
2333 dependent on both pre- and post-release factors. Pre-release factors include the number of
2334 sexually active colonies, their geographic proximity, their fecundity and synchronization in the
2335 timing of gamete release. Post-release factors include environmental conditions such as
2336 currents and turbulence at the water surface and biological conditions such as gamete longevity.
2337 Although coral fecundity and recruitment may be lower at high-latitudes compared to the
2338 tropics (Hughes et al., 2002; St Gelais et al., 2016b) due to resource limitations, fecundity and
2339 recruitment in South Africa were shown to exceed that of tropical counterparts in Reunion
2340 (Massé, 2014). This and the fact that corals are genetically diverse on Sodwana Bay reefs
2341 (Montoya-Maya, 2014) suggests that fecundity is currently adequate.

2342 There is little riverine input at Sodwana Bay and any noteworthy salinity changes are
2343 anticipated to result from heavy rainfall. Spawning during peak rainfall months is reported in
2344 Hong Kong (Chui and Ang Jr, 2017), Guam (Richmond, 1993), French Polynesia (Hedouin et
2345 al., 2015) and South Africa (Kruger and Schleyer, 1998; Massé, 2014; Schleyer et al., 1997),
2346 with spawning observed during rainfall in Japan (Nozawa, 2012b) and this study. Storms are
2347 predicted to increase in intensity and frequency with global climate change (Du Plessis and
2348 Burger, 2015; Trenberth, 1999), increasing hyposaline conditions in the surface microfilm of
2349 water. This has been shown to significantly reduce fertilisation (Hedouin et al., 2015; Scott et
2350 al., 2013; Vermeij et al., 2006). Rainfall is also predicted to increase surface water turbulence
2351 which is anticipated to result in the faster dilution of gametes. Therefore, under these
2352 conditions, coral gamete production would have to be adequate to ensure fertilisation success.

2353

2354 Egg-sperm bundles from a diverse range of coral taxa have been found to contain a mean of
2355 between 2.04×10^6 to 1.93×10^7 sperm per bundle, with high variability in the amount of
2356 gametes released within a population and even within a colony (Teo et al., 2016). A reduction
2357 in sperm concentration and water salinity reduced fertilisation success in both species (Chapter
2358 3). In accordance with other studies (e.g. Nozawa et al., 2015; Oliver and Babcock, 1992),
2359 fertilisation success for both coral species was found to be greatest at a concentration between
2360 10^5 and 10^6 sperm ml^{-1} . Fertilisation success reduced significantly once sperm concentration
2361 fell below 10^4 sperm ml^{-1} (Chapter 3). Although decreased salinity negatively affects
2362 fertilisation, a recent study on marginal reefs in Hong Kong has revealed that the interactive
2363 effect of increased temperature and decreased salinity may in fact benefit recruit settlement and
2364 post-settlement survival of a dominant coral species (Chui and Ang Jr, 2017). Thus
2365 investigating the interactive effects of predicted climatic conditions on the early life stages,
2366 particularly fertilisation, on marginal reefs will be of value.

2367

2368 2. Does the presence of *Hydrolithon* sp. and *Mesophyllum* cf *funafutiense* crustose
2369 coralline algae affect the settlement and post-settlement survival of *A. austera* and *H.*
2370 *exesa* planulae?

2371

2372 The majority of settlement of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* larvae occurred soon after
2373 developing into planulae, but the longevity of some larvae of both species indicated the
2374 potential for long-distance dispersal along the east African coastline (Chapter 4). However,

2375 genetic assessments of *A. austera* stands on TMR indicate that there is localised retention of
2376 larvae (Montoya-Maya et al., 2016) which is a common trend found elsewhere (Ayre and
2377 Hughes, 2000; Miller and Mundy, 2003).

2378

2379 It is postulated that the complex and selective nature of pre- and post-settlement processes in
2380 corals evolved due to the need for specific conditions for settlement (Morse et al., 1988). The
2381 results of this study suggest that settlement conditions required by *A. austera* planulae are more
2382 specific than those for *H. exesa* (Chapter 4). Settlement of both *A. austera* and *H. exesa* larvae
2383 was significantly greater in the presence of *Hydrolithon*, but not *Mesophyllum* (Chapter 4).
2384 However, the presence of CCA is not a strict requirement for settlement as larvae from both
2385 species were capable of settling in filtered seawater alone (Chapter 4). While *H. exesa* settled
2386 predominantly on *Hydrolithon* fragments, most *A. austera* settlement occurred on container
2387 surfaces that held the CCA fragments (Chapter 4).

2388

2389 This contrasts with studies that have shown a preference for corals to settle on CCA surfaces,
2390 including *Hydrolithon* species (Harrington, 2004). This disparity supports the notion that both
2391 chemical (Negri et al., 2001) and physical cues (Whalan et al., 2015) can trigger settlement,
2392 and that these vary according to the coral and CCA taxa under consideration (Doropoulos et
2393 al., 2016; Harrington et al., 2004). However, settlement induction may not necessarily translate
2394 into post-settlement success. For example, settlement on the macroalgae *Halimeda opuntia*, an
2395 ephemeral surface, results in significant post-settlement mortality (Nugues and Szmant, 2006).
2396 Furthermore, some CCA species are known to slough their outer layers (Harrington et al.,
2397 2004), and could dislodge settled coral recruits in the process. Thus, post-settlement success
2398 can also depend on the species of CCA or coral (Chapter 4, Harrington et al., 2004). CCA taxa
2399 are frequently combined into a single functional group in benthic surveys as their identification
2400 is difficult. However, the species-specific nature of their effect on the early life stages of corals
2401 highlights the importance of identifying them and their environmental interactions (Harrington
2402 et al., 2004). For example, the growth of CCA is compromised by ocean acidification, which
2403 could in turn affect the settlement of corals (Doropoulos et al., 2012b).

2404

2405 Past studies of CCA on Maputaland reefs have been predominantly taxonomic (Keats and
2406 Chamberlain, 1994a; Maneveldt et al., 2008), with limited research on their ecology and
2407 distribution. On TMR, *Mesophyllum* CCA are most common at 18-25 m and grow under dim

2408 light (Keats and Chamberlain, 1994b). A study on TMR quantifying benthic cover on coral
2409 rubble and settlement tiles revealed that CCA were most prolific (Gersun et al., 2016).
2410 Furthermore, CCA were the dominant group surrounding coral recruits on settlement tiles on
2411 TMR (Hart, 2012). CCA have been commonly observed growing on branches of *Acropora*
2412 skeletons (Keats and Chamberlain, 1994b), with *Hydrolithon* spp. being the most prevalent on
2413 *A. austera* (Hart pers. obs.). It is not known whether this is a competitive outcome whereby the
2414 CCA gradually kills the coral, or whether colonization by *Hydrolithon* constitutes secondary
2415 growth on coral skeletons. Coral recruits have also shown a preference to settle on bare coral
2416 skeletons (Lee et al., 2009). Established *A. austera* stands with CCA (and associated dead
2417 skeletal material) could thus provide a cue to recruits that an area is suitable for settlement.
2418 Indeed, large *A. austera* patches are a feature of the Sodwana reefs (Floros and Schleyer, 2017).
2419 In addition to potentially attracting recruits, their growth will to some degree be attributable to
2420 vegetative regrowth from natural breakage.

2421

2422 3. Do coral recruitment and benthic community differ on the substratum according to
2423 surface microhabitat?

2424

2425 The results of this study highlighted the heterogeneous recruitment of corals on TMR at both
2426 narrow and broad spatial scales, with pocilloporid recruits constituting the most common taxa
2427 in all tile treatments and at all locations (Chapter 5). At high latitudes, pocilloporid recruits are
2428 more prevalent than acroporids which are more dominant at low latitudes (Hughes et al., 2002).
2429 Most recruitment occurred at the deepest (northern) site in this study, highlighting depth as a
2430 potentially important factor in coral recruitment in South Africa. This is corroborated by other
2431 studies which have likewise found greater recruitment at a depth of ≥ 17 m on South African
2432 reefs (see Glassom et al., 2006) and elsewhere (Rogers et al., 1984; Smith, 1997). Thus deeper
2433 sites constitute significant areas for coral recruitment and understanding the drivers for this
2434 warrants investigation. The micro-spatial patterns of recruitment assessed in this study
2435 highlight the importance of surface microstructure. The experimental design used in this study
2436 assessed spatial patterns of coral recruitment rather than settlement, as surfaces were analysed
2437 after a six month soak time and therefore include post-settlement processes. The chosen
2438 experimental design provided a valuable snapshot of what recruitment dynamics on settlement
2439 tiles are like during the peak reproductive season of corals. Further fine-scale temporal analysis
2440 of settlement dynamics (involving frequent repeat observations of settlement tiles during the

2441 first settlement stages, such as those conducted by Martinez and Aronson (2013) would be
2442 beneficial as they could provide insight into spatial patterns observed in this study.

2443

2444 Textured surfaces more resemble natural reef substratum than smooth surfaces. The majority
2445 of settlement on the top surface of tiles occurred in the grooves in this study. Consequently the
2446 grooved settlement tile design created in this study is considered an improvement on
2447 traditionally used flat ceramic surfaces. Concentrated settlement on tile edges has important
2448 implications for the use of settlement tiles with different dimensions, as greater edge to surface
2449 area ratios could result in elevated measures of recruit density. Therefore, standardisation of
2450 settlement surfaces is imperative for cross-study comparisons (Field et al., 2007). The
2451 orientation of settlement tiles in this study, in terms of elevation and spacing, affected both the
2452 benthic community and density of coral recruits, although the two were not correlated (Chapter
2453 5). While substratum availability is probably not limiting coral recruitment on South African
2454 reefs, an understanding of settlement preferences and post-settlement dynamics on these
2455 marginal reefs will be important in their management and the monitoring of coral recruitment.
2456 Since the wide gap tile arrangement incurred the greatest amount of settlement, which was
2457 significantly greater than previously used narrow gap and raised treatments, the choice of this
2458 treatment (comprising a smaller 8 x 8 cm tiles) is recommended for future studies at this study
2459 site.

2460

2461 This aspect of the study has implications if the reefs ever suffer extensive damage. As has been
2462 elaborated, they occur in a high-energy environment and strong swell and surge action roll
2463 coral rubble repeatedly over the reefs during severe storms (J Hart & M. Schleyer, pers. obs).
2464 The reef surface is left scoured and smooth, yielding a surface less suitable for coral
2465 recruitment. Indeed, the absence or slow recovery of *A. austera* patches was noted by Floros
2466 & Schleyer (2017). While retexturing extensive areas of damaged reef would seem beyond the
2467 realms of possibility, a reef rehabilitation programme could incorporate reseeding damaged
2468 reef with fragments of live rock covered with CCA to promote their growth on the bare reef
2469 surface, thereby encouraging coral recruitment.

2470

2471 4. Does the exclusion of herbivores and predators have an effect on coral recruitment and
2472 benthic community structure?

2473

2474 Exclusion cages did not affect the spatial pattern of coral recruitment in this study but did have
2475 a significant effect on the amount of recruitment that occurred (Chapter 5). Recruitment was
2476 greatest on uncaged surfaces, which is a trend that has been observed in the Caribbean and
2477 Micronesia (Arnold et al., 2010; Doropoulos et al., 2016). As was documented by Gersun et al.
2478 (2016) on TMR, CCA and macroalgae constituted the dominant benthic cover categories,
2479 regardless of settlement surface (Chapter 5). More algae but less CCA were observed on
2480 uncaged tiles (Chapter 5). As discussed previously (Chapter 4), some CCA species can
2481 negatively influence recruitment, which could explain the reduced settlement observed on
2482 caged tiles. There was no correlation between recruit density and the benthic community. This
2483 is probably due to the majority of recruits being pocilloporids, which are considered generalist
2484 settlers.

2485

2486 The results of this study suggested that grazing pressures are not negatively influencing coral
2487 recruitment on TMR. The reduction in algae on the caged tiles could indicate that not all
2488 herbivores and predators were excluded, as small biota could fit through the cage bars. Fish
2489 communities play a vital role in the health of coral reef systems (Cinner et al., 2016;
2490 McClanahan et al., 2012), with herbivory known to play a significant part in reef resilience
2491 (McClanahan et al., 2012). While a detailed assessment of the fish community structure has
2492 been conducted on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa (Floros et al., 2013), limited research
2493 has been conducted on the ecology of fish on these reefs (but see Floros and Schleyer, 2017).
2494 Although the exploitation of non-game fish has long been prohibited on the reefs, the ecological
2495 role of herbivores warrants further investigation. In particular, studies should consider
2496 herbivorous taxa other than fish, as their functional roles may differ (Davies et al., 2013).
2497 Varying levels of grazing pressure on these reefs should also be considered as this would
2498 further facilitate reef management at the community level. This is especially needed in light of
2499 the important role that herbivores play in controlling macroalgal cover on reefs, which in turn
2500 can affect the suitability of surfaces for coral larval settlement (Doropoulos et al., 2014).

2501

2502 **6.2. Concluding remarks**

2503 The life histories, habitats and abundances of *A. austera* and *H. exesa* differ markedly.
2504 *Acropora austera* form dense, branching stands (which may coincidentally be promoted by the
2505 high levels of CCA associated with them), encouraging selective larval settlement within such
2506 patches (Chapter 3). Observations have shown that these large stands successfully form,

2507 senesce and die (Schleyer pers. comm.). In contrast, *H. exesa* colonies grow as isolated
2508 persistent encrustations randomly scattered on the reefs and occur in slightly deeper water than
2509 *A. austera*. While *A. austera* stands thus have growth flushes and are not necessarily long-
2510 lived, *H. exesa* colonies are persistent competitors on the reefs. In addition, the two corals differ
2511 in their bleaching tolerance, with *A. austera* more sensitive than *H. exesa* (Hart pers. obs.).
2512 Indeed, an increase in 2°C has been shown to negatively affect *A. austera* larval development,
2513 while a more robust species, *P. daedalea*, was able to withstand a 4°C increase in temperature
2514 (Massé, 2014). Furthermore, the growth morphology of *A. austera* is more susceptible to storm
2515 and diver damage (Schleyer and Tomalin, 2000). Collectively, these differences between *A.*
2516 *austera* and *H. exesa* suggest that, proportionately, more corals similar in characteristics to *H.*
2517 *exesa* will occur on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa in the future.

2518

2519 Although *A. austera* colonies on TMR take longer to reach sexual maturity than other
2520 acroporids found in the tropics (Hall and Hughes, 1996; Kojis, 1986; Montoya-Maya et al.,
2521 2014), presumably in response to marginal conditions (Montoya-Maya et al., 2014), their
2522 fecundity is greater (Massé, 2014). Stands of *A. austera* form important nurseries for fish
2523 (Floros and Schleyer, 2017) and it is predicted that these stands may be reduced in the future
2524 and thereby affect not only coral community structure, but have a ripple effect on fish
2525 communities. This may collectively alter the benthic community structure, with, for example
2526 macroalgae proliferating on exposed reefs with reduced herbivore pressure. However, in
2527 comparison to tropical reefs, the negative effects of global warming have occurred to a lesser
2528 extent, or not at all, in recent years on the high-latitude reefs of South Africa (Porter and
2529 Schleyer, 2017). Thus these reefs could provide a refuge for corals.

2530

2531 Although many of the world's diverse coral reef ecosystems as we know them are possibly
2532 under threat of extinction within the next 30 years, this threat varies spatially. Environmental
2533 stress could result in reduced gamete production, which in turn has implications for coral
2534 recruitment and reef resilience. Broadcast spawning corals are not being replenished in some
2535 locations, which is concerning as they are major contributors to reef structure (Kinzie III,
2536 1999). Tropical locations are at greater risk, while high-latitude locations, such as those along
2537 South Africa's north-east coast, constitute potential refugia (Beger et al., 2014; Riegl and Piller,
2538 2003). Additionally, the high-latitude reefs along the Maputaland coastline of South Africa are

2539 well managed within protected areas and their value and importance should not be
2540 underestimated.

2541

2542

2543 **References**

- 2544 Abelson, A., Denny, M., 1997. Settlement of marine organisms in flow. *Annual Review of*
2545 *Ecology and Systematics* 28, 317-339.
- 2546 Abelson, A., Weihs, D., Loya, Y., 1994. Hydrodynamic impediments to settlement of marine
2547 propagules, and adhesive-filament solutions. *Limnology and Oceanography* 39, 164-169.
- 2548 Abelson, A., Olinky, R., Gaines, S., 2005. Coral recruitment to the reefs of Eilat, Red Sea:
2549 Temporal and spatial variation, and possible effects of anthropogenic disturbances. *Marine*
2550 *Pollution Bulletin* 50, 576-582.
- 2551 Adjeroud, M., Penin, L., Carroll, A., 2007. Spatio-temporal heterogeneity in coral recruitment
2552 around Moorea, French Polynesia: Implications for population maintenance. *Journal of*
2553 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 341, 204-218.
- 2554 Adjeroud, M., Michonneau, F., Edmunds, P.J., Chancerelle, Y., de Loma, T.L., Penin, L.,
2555 Thibaut, L., Vidal-Dupiol, J., Salvat, B., Galzin, R., 2009. Recurrent disturbances,
2556 recovery trajectories, and resilience of coral assemblages on a South Central Pacific reef.
2557 *Coral Reefs* 28, 775-780.
- 2558 Aeby, G., Delbeek, J.C., Lovell, E., Richards, Z., Reboton, C., Bass, D., 2008. *Acropora*
2559 *austera*. The IUCN Red List of Threatened Species.
2560 <http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2008.RLTS.T133160A3607835.en>. Downloaded on
2561 13 November 2016, e.T133160A3607835.
- 2562 Albright, R., Mason, B., 2013. Projected near-future levels of temperature and $p\text{CO}_2$ reduce
2563 coral fertilization success. *PLoS One* 8, e56468.
- 2564 Alexander, B.E., Mueller, B., Vermeij, M.J., van der Geest, H.H., de Goeij, J.M., 2015.
2565 Biofouling of inlet pipes affects water quality in running seawater aquaria and
2566 compromises sponge cell proliferation. *PeerJ* 3, e1430.
- 2567 Anderson, M.J., 2001. A new method for non-parametric multivariate analysis of variance.
2568 *Austral Ecology* 26, 32-46.
- 2569 Anderson, M.J., Gorley, R.N., Clarke, K.R., 2008. PERMANOVA+ for PRIMER: Guide to
2570 Software and Statistical Methods. PRIMER-E, Plymouth, UK.
- 2571 Anderson, R., Bolton, J.J., 2005. Introduction. In: DeClerck, O., Bolton, J.J., Anderson, R.J.,
2572 Coppejans, E. (Eds.), *Guide to the Seaweeds of Kwazulu-Natal*. National Botanic Garden
2573 of Belgium, Brussels, pp. 12-37.
- 2574 Anderson, R.J., McKune, C., Bolton, J.J., DeClerck, O., Tronchin, E., 2005. Patterns in subtidal
2575 seaweed communities on coral-dominated reefs at Sodwana Bay on the KwaZulu-Natal
2576 coast, South Africa. *African Journal of Marine Science* 27, 529-537.
- 2577 Arai, I., Kato, M., Heyward, A., Ikeda, Y., Iizuka, T., Maruyama, T., 1993. Lipid composition
2578 of positively buoyant eggs of reef building corals. *Coral Reefs* 12, 71-75.

- 2579 Arnold, S.N., Steneck, R.S., 2011. Settling into an increasingly hostile world: The rapidly
2580 closing “recruitment window” for corals. PLoS One 6, e28681.
- 2581 Arnold, S.N., Steneck, R.S., Mumby, P.J., 2010. Running the gauntlet: Inhibitory effects of
2582 algal turfs on the processes of coral recruitment. Marine Ecology Progress Series 414, 91-
2583 105.
- 2584 Aronson, R.B., Precht, W.F., Murdoch, T.J., Robbart, M.L., 2005. Long-term persistence of
2585 coral assemblages on the Flower Garden Banks, northwestern Gulf of Mexico:
2586 Implications for science and management. Gulf of Mexico Science 23, 6.
- 2587 Atkinson, S., Atkinson, M.J., 1992. Detection of estradiol-17 β during a mass coral spawn.
2588 Coral Reefs 11, 33-35.
- 2589 Ayre, D.J., Resing, J.M., 1986. Sexual and asexual production of planulae in reef corals.
2590 Marine Biology 90, 187-190.
- 2591 Ayre, D.J., Hughes, T.P., 2000. Genotypic diversity and gene flow in brooding and spawning
2592 corals along the Great Barrier Reef, Australia. Evolution 54, 1590-1605.
- 2593 Babcock, R., Davies, P., 1991. Effects of sedimentation on settlement of *Acropora millepora*.
2594 Coral Reefs 9, 205-208.
- 2595 Babcock, R., Mundy, C., 1996. Coral recruitment: Consequences of settlement choice for early
2596 growth and survivorship in two scleractinians. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology
2597 and Ecology 206, 179-201.
- 2598 Babcock, R.C., 1985. Growth and mortality in juvenile corals (*Goniastrea*, *Platygyra* and
2599 *Acropora*): The first year, Proceedings of the 5th International Coral Reef Congress, Tahiti,
2600 pp. 355-360.
- 2601 Babcock, R.C., 1991. Comparative demography of three species of scleractinian corals using
2602 age- and size-dependent classifications. Ecological Monographs 61, 225-244.
- 2603 Babcock, R.C., Heyward, A.J., 1986. Larval development of certain gamete-spawning
2604 scleractinian corals. Coral Reefs 5, 111-116.
- 2605 Babcock, R.C., Wills, B.L., Simpson, C.J., 1994. Mass spawning of corals on a high latitude
2606 coral reef. Coral Reefs 13, 161-169.
- 2607 Babcock, R.C., Baird, A.H., Piromvaragorn, S., Thomson, D.P., Willis, B.L., 2003.
2608 Identification of scleractinian coral recruits from Indo-Pacific Reefs. Zoological Studies
2609 42, 211-226.
- 2610 Babcock, R.C., Bull, G.D., Harrison, P.L., Heyward, A.J., Oliver, J.K., Wallace, C.C., Willis,
2611 B.L., 1986. Synchronous spawnings of 105 scleractinian coral species on the Great Barrier
2612 Reef. Marine Biology 90, 379-394.
- 2613 Bachtiar, I., 2001. Reproduction of three scleractinian corals (*Acropora cytherea*, *A. nobilis*,
2614 *Hydnophora rigida*) in eastern Lombok Strait, Indonesia. Ilmu Kelautan 6, 18-27.

- 2615 Baird, A., Hughes, T., 1996. Spatial variation in coral recruitment around Lizard Island,
2616 Australia. Proceedings of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium, Panama 1, 1207-
2617 1210.
- 2618 Baird, A.H., 2001. The ecology of coral larvae: Settlement patterns, habitat selection and the
2619 length of the larval phase, School of Marine Biology and Aquaculture. James Cook
2620 University, Australia, pp. 181.
- 2621 Baird, A.H., Hughes, T.P., 2000. Competitive dominance by tabular corals: An experimental
2622 analysis of recruitment and survival of understorey assemblages. Journal of Experimental
2623 Marine Biology and Ecology 251, 117-132.
- 2624 Baird, A.H., Marshall, P.A., 2002. Mortality, growth and reproduction in scleractinian corals
2625 following bleaching on the Great Barrier Reef. Marine Ecology Progress Series 237, 133-
2626 141.
- 2627 Baird, A.H., Morse, A.N.C., 2004. Induction of metamorphosis in larvae of the brooding corals
2628 *Acropora palifera* and *Stylophora pistillata*. Marine and Freshwater Research 55, 469-472.
- 2629 Baird, A.H., Babcock, R.C., Mundy, C.P., 2003. Habitat selection by larvae influences the
2630 depth distribution of six common coral species. Marine Ecology Progress Series 252, 289-
2631 293.
- 2632 Baird, A.H., Salih, A., Trevor-Jones, A., 2006. Fluorescence census techniques for the early
2633 detection of coral recruits. Coral Reefs 25, 73-76.
- 2634 Baird, A.H., Guest, J.R., Willis, B.L., 2009. Systematic and biogeographical patterns in the
2635 reproductive biology of scleractinian corals. Annual Review of Ecology, Evolution and
2636 Systematics 40, 551-571.
- 2637 Baird, A.H., Cumbo, V.R., Gudge, S., Keith, S.A., Maynard, J.A., Tan, C.H., Woolsey, E.S.,
2638 2015. Coral reproduction on the world's southernmost reef at Lord Howe Island, Australia.
2639 Aquatic Biology 23, 275-284.
- 2640 Bak, R.P.M., Engel, M.S., 1979. Distribution, abundance and survival of juvenile hermatypic
2641 corals (Scleractinia) and the importance of life history strategies in the parent coral
2642 community. Marine Biology 54, 341-352.
- 2643 Ball, E.E., Hayward, D.C., Reece-Hoyes, J.S., Hislop, N.R., Samuel, G., Saint, R., Harrison,
2644 P.L., Miller, D.J., 2002. Coral development: From classical embryology to molecular
2645 control. Int J Dev Biol 46, 671-678.
- 2646 Baria, M.V.B., Cruz, D.W.d., Villanueva, R.D., Guest, J.R., 2012. Spawning of three-year-old
2647 *Acropora millepora* corals reared from larvae in northwestern Philippines. Bulletin of
2648 Marine Science 88, 61-62.
- 2649 Baria, M.V.B., Guest, J.R., Edwards, A.J., Alino, P.M., Heyward, A.J., Gomez, E.D., 2010.
2650 Caging enhances post-settlement survival of juveniles of the scleractinian coral *Acropora*
2651 *tenuis*. Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 394, 149-153.

- 2652 Barott, K.L., Williams, G.J., Vermeij, M.J.A., Harris, J., Smith, J.E., Rohwer, F.L., Sandin,
2653 S.A., 2012. Natural history of coral–algae competition across a gradient of human activity
2654 in the Line Islands. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 460, 1-12.
- 2655 Bassim, K.M., Sammarco, P.W., 2003. Effects of temperature and ammonium on larval
2656 development and survivorship in a scleractinian coral (*Diploria strigosa*). *Marine Biology*
2657 142, 241-252.
- 2658 Bassim, K.M., Sammarco, P.W., Snell, T.L., 2002. Effects of temperature on success of (self
2659 and non-self) fertilization and embryogenesis in *Diploria strigosa* (Cnidaria, Scleractinia).
2660 *Marine Biology* 140, 479-488.
- 2661 Baums, I.B., Devlin-Durante, M.K., Polato, N.R., Xu, D., Giri, S., Altman, N.S., Ruiz, D.,
2662 Parkinson, J.E., Boulay, J.N., 2013. Genotypic variation influences reproductive success
2663 and thermal stress tolerance in the reef building coral, *Acropora palmata*. *Coral Reefs* 32,
2664 703-717.
- 2665 Beger, M., Sommer, B., Harrison, P.L., Smith, S.D.A., Pandolfi, J.M., Cowie, R., 2014.
2666 Conserving potential coral reef refuges at high latitudes. *Diversity and Distributions* 20,
2667 245-257.
- 2668 Belliveau, S.A., Paul, V.J., 2002. Effects of herbivory and nutrients on the early colonization
2669 of crustose coralline and fleshy algae. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 232, 105–114.
- 2670 Benayahu, Y., Loya, Y., 1984. Substratum preferences and planulae settling of two Red Sea
2671 Alcyonaceans: *Xenia macrospiculata* Gohar and *Parerythropodium fulvum fulvum*
2672 (Forsk.). *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 83, 249-261.
- 2673 Birkeland, C., 1977. The importance of rate of biomass accumulation in early successional
2674 stages of benthic communities to the survival of coral recruits. *Proceedings of the 3rd*
2675 *International Coral Reef Symposium, Miami* 1, 15-21.
- 2676 Birkeland, C., Randall, R.H., 1981. Facilitation of coral recruitment by echinoid excavations.
2677 *Proceedings of the 4th International Coral Reef Symposium, Manila* 1, 695-698.
- 2678 Birrell, C.L., McCook, L.J., Willis, B.L., 2005. Effects of algal turfs and sediment on coral
2679 settlement. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 51, 408-414.
- 2680 Birrell, C.L., McCook, L.J., Willis, B.L., Diaz-Pulido, G.A., 2008a. Effects of benthic algae
2681 on the replenishment of corals and the implications for the resilience of coral reefs.
2682 *Oceanography and Marine Biology: An Annual Review* 46, 25-63.
- 2683 Birrell, C.L., McCook, L.J., Willis, B.L., Harrington, L., 2008b. Chemical effects of
2684 macroalgae on larval settlement of the broadcast spawning coral *Acropora millepora*.
2685 *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 362, 129-137.
- 2686 Boch, C.A., Morse, A.N.C., 2012. Testing the effectiveness of direct propagation techniques
2687 for coral restoration of *Acropora* spp. *Ecological engineering* 40, 11-17.

- 2688 Bouwmeester, J., Berumen, M.L., Baird, A.H., 2011. Daytime broadcast spawning of
2689 *Pocillopora verrucosa* on coral reefs of the central Red Sea. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral*
2690 *Reef Studies* 13, 23-24.
- 2691 Bouwmeester, J., Baird, A.H., Chen, C.J., Guest, J.R., Vicentuan, K.C., Berumen, M.L., 2014.
2692 Multi-species spawning synchrony within scleractinian coral assemblages in the Red Sea.
2693 *Coral Reefs* 34, 65-77.
- 2694 Boxshall, A.J., 2000. The importance of flow and settlement cues to larvae of the abalone,
2695 *Haliotis rufescens* Swainson. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 254,
2696 143-167.
- 2697 Brady, A.K., Hilton, J.D., Vize, P.D., 2009. Coral spawn timing is a direct response to solar
2698 light cycles and is not an entrained circadian response. *Coral Reefs* 28, 677-680.
- 2699 Brandl, S.J., Bellwood, D.R., 2016. Microtopographic refuges shape consumer-producer
2700 dynamics by mediating consumer functional diversity. *Oecologia*, 1-15.
- 2701 Brazeau, D.A., Gleason, D.F., E, M.M., 1998. Self-fertilization in brooding hermaphroditic
2702 Caribbean corals: Evidence from molecular markers. *Journal of Experimental Marine*
2703 *Biology and Ecology* 231, 225-238.
- 2704 Brazeau, D.A., Sammarco, P.W., Atchison, A.D., 2011. Micro-scale genetic heterogeneity and
2705 structure in coral recruitment: Fine-scale patchiness. *Aquatic Biology* 12, 55-67.
- 2706 Bridge, T.C.L., Hughes, T.P., Guinotte, J.M., Bongaerts, P., 2013. Call to protect all coral reefs.
2707 *Nature Climate Change* 3, 528–530.
- 2708 Brock, R.E., 1979. An experimental study on the effects of grazing by parrotfishes and role of
2709 refuges in benthic community structure. *Marine Biology* 51, 381-388.
- 2710 Bronstein, O., Loya, Y., 2011. Daytime spawning of *Porites rus* on the coral reefs of Chumbe
2711 Island in Zanzibar, Western Indian Ocean (WIO). *Coral Reefs* 30, 441-441.
- 2712 Bruno, J.F., Selig, E.R., 2007. Regional decline of coral cover in the Indo-Pacific: Timing,
2713 extent, and subregional comparisons. *PLoS One* 2, e711.
- 2714 Burkepile, D.E., Hay, M.E., 2010. Impact of herbivore identity on algal succession and coral
2715 growth on a Caribbean reef. *PLoS One* 5, e8963.
- 2716 Burt, J., Bartholomew, A., Bauman, A., Saif, A., Sale, P.F., 2009. Coral recruitment and early
2717 benthic community development on several materials used in the construction of artificial
2718 reefs and breakwaters. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 373, 72–78.
- 2719 Carleton, J.H., Sammarco, P.W., 1987. Effects of substratum irregularity on success of coral
2720 settlement: Quantification by comparative geomorphological techniques. *Bulletin of*
2721 *Marine Science* 40, 85-98.
- 2722 Carlon, D.B., 1999. The evolution of mating systems in tropical reef corals. *Trends in Ecology*
2723 *& Evolution* 14, 491-495.

- 2724 Carpenter, K.E., Abrar, M., Aeby, G., Aronson, R.B., Banks, S., Bruckner, A., Chiriboga, A.,
2725 Cortés, J., Delbeek, J.C., DeVantier, L., Edgar, G.J., Edwards, A.J., Fenner, D., Guzmán,
2726 H.M., Hoeksema, B.W., Hodgson, G., Johan, O., Licuanan, W.Y., Livingstone, S.R.,
2727 Lovell, E.R., Moore, J.A., Obura, D.O., Ochavillo, D., Polidoro, B.A., Precht, W.F.,
2728 Quibilan, M.C., Reboton, C., Richards, Z.T., Rogers, A.D., Sanciangco, J., Sheppard, A.,
2729 Sheppard, C., Smith, J., Stuart, S., Turak, E., Veron, J.E.N., Wallace, C., Weil, E., Wood,
2730 E., 2008. One-third of reef-building corals face elevated extinction risk from climate
2731 change and local impacts. *Science* 321, 560-563.
- 2732 Carroll, A., Harrison, P., Adjeroud, M., 2005. Sexual reproduction of *Acropora* reef corals at
2733 Moorea, French Polynesia. *Coral Reefs* 25, 93-97.
- 2734 Celliers, L., 2001. Effects of a crown-of-thorns starfish outbreak relative to other disturbances
2735 on marginal, high-latitude coral communities at Sodwana Bay, South Africa. PhD Thesis.
2736 University of Natal, pp. 181.
- 2737 Celliers, L., Schleyer, M.H., 2002. Coral bleaching on high-latitude marginal reefs at Sodwana
2738 Bay, South Africa. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 44, 1380-1387.
- 2739 Celliers, L., Schleyer, M.H., 2008. Coral community structure and risk assessment of high-
2740 latitude reefs at Sodwana Bay, South Africa. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 17, 3097–
2741 3117.
- 2742 Chamberland, V., Petersen, D., Latijnhouwers, K., Snowden, S., Mueller, B., Vermeij, M.,
2743 2016. Four-year-old Caribbean *Acropora* colonies reared from field-collected gametes are
2744 sexually mature. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 92, 263-264.
- 2745 Chamberland, V.F., Petersen, D., Guest, J.R., Petersen, U., Brittsan, M., Vermeij, M.J., 2017.
2746 New seeding approach reduces costs and time to outplant sexually propagated corals for
2747 reef restoration. *Scientific Reports* 7, 18076.
- 2748 Chia, F.S., Buckland-Nicks, J., Young, C.M., 1984. Locomotion of marine invertebrate larvae:
2749 A review. *Canadian Journal of Zoology* 62, 1205-1222.
- 2750 Chong-Seng, K.M., Graham, N.A.J., Pratchett, M.S., 2014. Bottlenecks to coral recovery in
2751 the Seychelles. *Coral Reefs* 33, 449-461.
- 2752 Chornesky, E.A., Peters, E.C., 1987. Sexual reproduction and colony growth in the
2753 scleractinian coral *Porites astreoides*. *Biological Bulletin* 172, 161-177.
- 2754 Chua, C.M., Leggat, W., Moya, A., Baird, A.H., 2013a. Near-future reductions in pH will have
2755 no consistent ecological effects on the early life-history stages of reef corals. *Marine*
2756 *Ecology Progress Series* 486, 143-151.
- 2757 Chua, C.M., Leggat, W., Moya, A., Baird, A.H., 2013b. Temperature affects the early life
2758 history stages of corals more than near future ocean acidification. *Marine Ecology Progress*
2759 *Series* 475, 85-92.
- 2760 Chui, A.P.Y., Ang Jr, P., 2017. High tolerance to temperature and salinity change should enable
2761 scleractinian coral *Platygyra acuta* from marginal environments to persist under future
2762 climate change. *PLoS ONE* 12, e0179423.

- 2763 Chui, A.P.Y., Wong, M.C., Liu, S.H., Lee, G.W., Chan, S.W., Lau, P.L., Leung, S.M., Ang,
2764 P., 2014. Gametogenesis, embryogenesis, and fertilization ecology of *Platygyra acuta* in
2765 marginal nonreefal coral communities in Hong Kong. *Journal of Marine Biology* 2014, 1-
2766 9.
- 2767 Cinner, J., 2014. Coral reef livelihoods. *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability* 7,
2768 65-71.
- 2769 Cinner, J.E., Huchery, C., M. Aaron MacNeil, Nicholas A.J. Graham, Tim R. McClanahan,
2770 Joseph Maina, Eva Maire, John N. Kittinger, Christina C. Hicks, Camilo Mora, E.H.A.,
2771 Stephanie D'Agata, Andrew Hoey, David A. Feary, Larry Crowder, Ivor D. Williams,
2772 Michel Kulbicki, Laurent Vigliola, Laurent Wantiez, Graham Edgar, Rick D. Stuart-
2773 Smith, Stuart A. Sandin, Alison L. Green, Marah J. Hardt, Maria Beger, Alan Friedlander,
2774 Stuart J. Campbell, Katherine E. Holmes, Shaun K. Wilson, Eran Brokovich, Andrew J.
2775 Brooks, Juan J. Cruz-Motta, David J. Booth, Pascale Chabanet, Charlie Gough, Mark
2776 Tupper, Sebastian C. A. Ferse, Sumaila, U.R., Mouillot, D., 2016. Bright spots among the
2777 world's coral reefs. *Nature* 535, 416-419.
- 2778 Colgan, M.W., 1987. Coral reef recovery on Guam (Micronesia) after catastrophic predation
2779 by *Acanthaster planci*. *Ecology* 68, 1592-1605.
- 2780 Connell, J.H., 1978. Diversity in tropical rain forests and coral reefs. *Science* 199, 1302-1310.
- 2781 Connell, J.H., Hughes, T.P., Wallace, C.C., 1997. A 30-year study of coral abundance,
2782 recruitment, and disturbance at several scales in space and time. *Ecological Monographs*
2783 67, 461-488.
- 2784 Costanza, R., R. de Groot, R., Sutton, P., van der Ploeg, S., Anderson, S.J., Kubiszewski, I.,
2785 Farber, S., Turner, R.K., 2014. Changes in the global value of ecosystem services. *Global*
2786 *Environmental Change* 26, 152-158.
- 2787 Côté, I.M., Darling, E.S., 2010. Rethinking ecosystem resilience in the face of climate change.
2788 *PLoS Biol* 8, e1000438.
- 2789 Cox, E.F., Ward, S., 2002. Impact of elevated ammonium on reproduction in two Hawaiian
2790 scleractinian corals with different life history patterns. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 44, 1230-
2791 1235.
- 2792 Darling, E.S., McClanahan, T.R., Côté, I.M., 2013. Life histories predict coral community
2793 disassembly under multiple stressors. *Global Change Biology* 19, 1930-1940.
- 2794 Davies, S.W., Matz, M.V., Vize, P.D., 2013. Ecological complexity of coral recruitment
2795 processes: Effects of invertebrate herbivores on coral recruitment and growth depends
2796 upon substratum properties and coral species. *PLoS One* 8, e72830.
- 2797 Davies SW, M.E., Guermond SM, Matz MV, 2014. A cross-ocean comparison of responses to
2798 settlement cues in reef-building corals. *PeerJ* 2.
- 2799 dela Cruz, D.W., Harrison, P.L., 2017. Enhanced larval supply and recruitment can replenish
2800 reef corals on degraded reefs. *Scientific Reports* 7, 13985.

- 2801 Denis, V., Loubeyres, M., Doo, S.S., Palmas, S.d., Keshavmurthy, S., Hsieh, H.J., Chen, C.A.,
2802 2014. Can benthic algae mediate larval behavior and settlement of the coral *Acropora*
2803 *muricata*? Coral reefs 33, 431–440.
- 2804 Diaz-Pulido, G., Harii, S., McCook, L.J., Hoegh-Guldberg, O., 2010. The impact of benthic
2805 algae on the settlement of a reef-building coral. Coral Reefs 29, 203-208.
- 2806 Dixon, D.L., Abrego, D., Hay, M.E., 2014. Chemically mediated behavior of recruiting corals
2807 and fishes: A tipping point that may limit reef recovery. Science 345, 892-897.
- 2808 Doropoulos, C., Ward, S., Marshall, A., Diaz-Pulido, G., Mumby, P.J., 2012a. Interactions
2809 among chronic and acute impacts on coral recruits: The importance of size-escape
2810 thresholds. Ecology 93, 2131-2138.
- 2811 Doropoulos, C., Ward, S., Diaz-Pulido, G., Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Mumby, P.J., 2012b. Ocean
2812 acidification reduces coral recruitment by disrupting intimate larval-algal settlement
2813 interactions. Ecology Letters 15, 338-346.
- 2814 Doropoulos, C., Ward, S., Roff, G., Gonzalez-Rivero, M., Mumby, P.J., 2015. Linking
2815 demographic processes of juvenile corals to benthic recovery trajectories in two common
2816 reef habitats. PLoS One 10, e0128535.
- 2817 Doropoulos, C., Roff, G., Zupan, M., Nestor, V., Isechal, A.L., Mumby, P.J., 2014. Reef-scale
2818 failure of coral settlement following typhoon disturbance and macroalgal bloom in Palau,
2819 Western Pacific. Coral Reefs 33, 613-623.
- 2820 Doropoulos, C., Roff, G., Bozec, Y.-M., Zupan, M., Werninghausen, J., Mumby, P.J., 2016.
2821 Characterizing the ecological trade-offs throughout the early ontogeny of coral
2822 recruitment. Ecological Monographs 86, 20-44.
- 2823 Downs, C.A., Kramarsky-Winter, E., Woodley, C.M., Downs, A., Winters, G., Loya, Y.,
2824 Ostrander, G.K., 2009. Cellular pathology and histopathology of hypo-salinity exposure
2825 on the coral *Stylophora pistillata*. Sci Total Environ 407, 4838-4851.
- 2826 Drushka, K., Asher, W.E., Ward, B., Walesby, K., 2016. Understanding the formation and
2827 evolution of rain-formed fresh lenses at the ocean surface. Journal of Geophysical
2828 Research: Oceans 121, 2673-2689.
- 2829 Du Plessis, J.A., Burger, G.J., 2015. Investigation into increasing short-duration rainfall
2830 intensities in South Africa. Water SA 41, 416-424.
- 2831 Dunstan, P.K., Johnson, C.R., 1998. Spatio-temporal variation in coral recruitment at different
2832 scales on Heron Reef, southern Great Barrier Reef. Coral Reefs 17, 71-81.
- 2833 Edmunds, P.J., Carpenter, R.C., 2001. Recovery of *Diadema antillarum* reduces macroalgal
2834 cover and increases abundance of juvenile corals on a Caribbean reef. Proceedings of the
2835 National Academy of Sciences of the United States of America 98, 5067-5071.
- 2836 Edmunds, P.J., Gates, R.D., Gleason, D.F., 2001. The biology of larvae from the reef coral
2837 *Porites astreoides*, and their response to temperature disturbances. Marine Biology 139,
2838 981-989.

- 2839 Edmunds, P.J., Nozawa, Y., Villanueva, R.D., 2014. Refuges modulate coral recruitment in the
2840 Caribbean and the Pacific. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 254, 78-
2841 84.
- 2842 English, D., Wilkinson, D., Baker, V., 1997. *Survey Manual for Tropical Marine Resources*.
2843 Australian Institute of Marine Science, Townsville.
- 2844 Erftemeijer, P.L.A., Hagedorn, M., Laterveer, M., Craggs, J., Guest, J.R., 2012. Effect of
2845 suspended sediment on fertilization success in the scleractinian coral *Pectinia lactuca*.
2846 *Journal of the Marine Biological Association of the United Kingdom* 92, 741-745.
- 2847 Erwin, P.M., Szmant, A.M., 2010. Settlement induction of *Acropora palmata* planulae by a
2848 GLW-amide neuropeptide. *Coral Reefs* 29, 929-939.
- 2849 Erwin, P.M., Song, B., Szmant, A.M., 2008. Settlement behavior of *Acropora palmata*
2850 planulae: Effects of biofilm age and crustose coralline algal cover. *Proceedings of the 11th*
2851 *International Coral Reef Symposium*, Florida, 1219-1223.
- 2852 Eynaud, Y., McNamara, D.E., Sandin, S.A., 2016. Herbivore space use influences coral reef
2853 recovery. *Royal Society Open Science* 3, 160262.
- 2854 Fabricius, K.E., Metzner, J., 2004. Scleractinian walls of mouths: Predation on coral larvae by
2855 corals. *Coral Reefs* 23, 245-248.
- 2856 Fadlallah, Y.H., 1983. Sexual reproduction, development and larval biology in scleractinian
2857 corals. *Coral Reefs* 2, 129-150.
- 2858 Fairfull, S.J.L., Harriott, V.J., 1999. Succession, space and coral recruitment in a subtropical
2859 fouling community. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 50, 235-242.
- 2860 Fellegara, I., Baird, A.H., Ward, S., 2013. Coral reproduction in a high-latitude, marginal reef
2861 environment (Moreton Bay, south-east Queensland, Australia). *Invertebrate Reproduction*
2862 *& Development* 57, 219-223.
- 2863 Field, S.N., Glassom, D., Bythell, J., 2007. Effects of artificial settlement plate materials and
2864 methods of deployment on the sessile epibenthic community development in a tropical
2865 environment. *Coral Reefs* 26, 279-289.
- 2866 Figueiredo, J., Baird, A.H., Harii, S., Connolly, S.R., 2014. Increased local retention of reef
2867 coral larvae as a result of ocean warming. *Nature Climate Change* 4, 498-502.
- 2868 Figueiredo, M.A.O., Norton, T.A., Kain, J.M., 1997. Settlement and survival of epiphytes on
2869 two intertidal crustose coralline alga. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*
2870 *Ecology* 213, 247-260.
- 2871 Floros, C., 2010. An evaluation of coral reef fish communities in South African Marine
2872 Protected Areas. University of KwaZulu-Natal, pp. 188.
- 2873 Floros, C., Schleyer, M.H., 2017. The functional importance of *Acropora austera* as nursery
2874 areas for juvenile reef fish on South African coral reefs. *Coral Reefs* 31, 139-149.

- 2875 Floros, C., Schleyer, M.H., Maggs, J.Q., 2013. Fish as indicators of diving and fishing pressure
2876 on high-latitude coral reefs. *Ocean & Coastal Management* 84, 130-139.
- 2877 Floros, C.D., Samways, M.J., Armstrong, B., 2004. Taxonomic patterns of bleaching within a
2878 South African coral assemblage. *Biodiversity and Conservation* 13, 1175-1194.
- 2879 Fogarty, N.D., 2012. Caribbean acroporid coral hybrids are viable across life history stages.
2880 *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 446, 145-159.
- 2881 Fogarty, N.D., Vollmer, S.V., Levitan, D.R., 2012. Weak prezygotic isolating mechanisms in
2882 threatened Caribbean *Acropora* corals. *PLoS One* 7, e30486.
- 2883 Foster, N.L., Baums, I.B., Sanchez, J.A., Paris, C.B., Chollett, I., Agudelo, C.L., Vermeij,
2884 M.J.A., Mumby, P.J., 2013. Hurricane-driven patterns of clonality in an ecosystem
2885 engineer: The Caribbean coral *Montastraea annularis*. *Plos One* 8, e53283.
- 2886 Foster, T., Heyward, A.J., Gilmour, J.P., 2018. Split spawning realigns coral reproduction with
2887 optimal environmental windows. *Nature Communications* 9, 718.
- 2888 Frade, P.R., Bongaerts, P., Englebert, N., Rogers, A., Gonzalez-Rivero, M., Hoegh-Guldberg,
2889 O., 2018. Deep reefs of the Great Barrier Reef offer limited thermal refuge during mass
2890 coral bleaching. *Nature Communications* 9, 3447.
- 2891 Franklin, H., Muhando, C.A., Lindahl, U., 1998. Coral culturing and temporal recruitment
2892 patterns in Zanzibar, Tanzania. *Ambio* 27, 651-655.
- 2893 Gardner, T., IM, C., Gill, F., Grant, A., Watkinson, A., 2003. Long-term region-wide declines
2894 in Caribbean corals. *Science* 301, 958-960.
- 2895 Gersun, L., Anderson, R.J., Hart, J.R., Maneveldt, G.W., Bolton, J.J., 2016. Sublittoral seaweed
2896 communities on natural and artificial substrata in a high-latitude coral community in South
2897 Africa. *African Journal of Marine Science* 38, 303-316
- 2898 Gilmour, J.P., Smith, L.D., Brinkman, R.M., 2009. Biannual spawning, rapid larval
2899 development and evidence of self-seeding for scleractinian corals at an isolated system of
2900 reefs. *Marine Biology* 156, 1297-1309.
- 2901 Gilmour, J.P., Smith, L.D., Heyward, A.J., Baird, A.H., Pratchett, M.S., 2013. Recovery of an
2902 isolated coral reef system following severe disturbance. *Science* 340, 69-71.
- 2903 Glassom, D., Zakai, D., Chadwick-Furman, N.E., 2004. Coral recruitment: a spatio-temporal
2904 analysis along the coastline of Eilat, northern Red Sea. *Marine Biology* 144, 641-651.
- 2905 Glassom, D., Celliers, L., Schleyer, M.H., 2006. Coral recruitment patterns at Sodwana Bay,
2906 South Africa. *Coral Reefs* 25, 485-492.
- 2907 Gleason, D.F., Hofmann, D.K., 2011. Coral larvae: From gametes to recruits. *Journal of*
2908 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 408, 42-57.
- 2909 Gleason, D.F., Brazeau, D.A., Munfus, D., 2001. Can self-fertilizing coral species be used to
2910 enhance restoration of Caribbean reefs? *Bulletin of Marine Science* 69, 933-943.

- 2911 Gleason, D.F., Edmunds, P.J., Gates, R.D., 2006. Ultraviolet radiation effects on the behavior
2912 and recruitment of larvae from the reef coral *Porites astreoides*. *Marine Biology* 148, 503-
2913 512.
- 2914 Gleason, D.F., Danilowicz, B.S., Nolan, C.J., 2009. Reef waters stimulate substratum
2915 exploration in planulae from brooding Caribbean corals. *Coral Reefs* 28, 549-554.
- 2916 Goh, B.P.L., Lee, C.S., 2008. A study of the effect of sediment accumulation on the settlement
2917 of coral larvae using conditioned tiles, Proceedings of the 11th International Coral Reef
2918 Symposium, Florida, pp. 1235-1239.
- 2919 Golbuu, Y., Richmond, R.H., 2007. Substratum preferences in planula larvae of two species of
2920 scleractinian corals, *Goniastrea retiformis* and *Stylaraea punctata*. *Marine Biology* 152,
2921 639-644.
- 2922 Graham, E.M., Baird, A.H., Connolly, S.R., 2008. Survival dynamics of scleractinian coral
2923 larvae and implications for dispersal. *Coral Reefs* 27, 529-539.
- 2924 Grasso, L.C., Negri, A.P., Fôret, S., Saint, R., Hayward, D.C., Miller, D.J., Ball, E.E., 2011.
2925 The biology of coral metamorphosis: Molecular responses of larvae to inducers of
2926 settlement and metamorphosis. *Developmental Biology* 353, 411–419.
- 2927 Green, D.H., Edmunds, P.J., Pochon, X., Gates, R.D., 2010. The effects of substratum type on
2928 the growth, mortality, and photophysiology of juvenile corals in St. John, US Virgin
2929 Islands. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 384, 18–29.
- 2930 Greenstein, B.J., Pandolfi, J.M., 2008. Escaping the heat: range shifts of reef coral taxa in
2931 coastal Western Australia. *Global Change Biol.* 14, 513-528.
- 2932 Gress, E., Paige, N., Bollard, S., 2014. Observations of *Acropora* spawning in the Mozambique
2933 Channel. *West. Indian Ocean J. Mar. Sci.* 13, 107.
- 2934 Grimmer, A., 2011. Accretion versus bioerosion on the Maputaland reefs in South Africa –
2935 The major processes. MSc thesis. University of KwaZulu-Natal, pp. 79.
- 2936 Guest, Jr., Baird, A.H., Goh, B.P.L., Chou, L.M., 2005. Seasonal reproduction in equatorial
2937 reef corals. *Invertebrate Reproduction & Development* 48, 207-218.
- 2938 Guest, J.R., Baird, A.H., Goh, B.P.L., Chou, L.M., 2004. Reproductive seasonality in an
2939 equatorial assemblage of scleractinian corals. *Coral Reefs* 24, 112-116.
- 2940 Guest, J.R., Baird, A.H., Clifton, K.E., Heyward, A.J., 2008. From molecules to moonbeams:
2941 Spawning synchrony in coral reef organisms. *Invertebrate Reproduction & Development*
2942 51, 145-149.
- 2943 Guest, J.R., Baria, M.V., Gomez, E.D., Heyward, A.J., Edwards, A.J., 2013. Closing the circle:
2944 Is it feasible to rehabilitate reefs with sexually propagated corals? *Coral Reefs* 33, 45-55.
- 2945 Guest, J.R., Heyward, A., Omori, M., Iwao, K., Morse, A., Boch, C., 2010. Rearing coral larvae
2946 for reef rehabilitation. In: Edwards, A.J. (Ed.), *Reef Rehabilitation Manual*. Coral Reef

- 2947 Targeted Research and Capacity Building for Management Program, St. Lucia, Australia,
2948 pp. 73-92.
- 2949 Hadfield, M., 2011. Biofilms and marine invertebrate larvae: What bacteria produce that larvae
2950 use to choose settlement sites. *Annual Review of Marine Science* 3, 453–470.
- 2951 Hagedorn, M., Carter, V.L., 2016. Cryobiology: Principles, species conservation and benefits
2952 for coral reefs. *Reproduction Fertility and Development* 28, 1049-1060.
- 2953 Hall, V.R., Hughes, T.P., 1996. Reproductive strategies of modular organisms: Comparative
2954 studies of reef-building corals. *Ecology* 77, 950-963.
- 2955 Harii, S., Omori, M., Yamakawa, H., Koike, Y., 2001. Sexual reproduction and larval
2956 settlement of the zooxanthellate coral *Alveopera japonica* Eguchi at high latitudes. *Coral*
2957 *Reefs* 20, 19-23.
- 2958 Harii, S., Nadaoka, K., Yamamoto, M., Iwao, K., 2007. Temporal changes in settlement, lipid
2959 content and lipid composition of larvae of the spawning hermatypic coral *Acropora tenuis*.
2960 *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 346, 89-96.
- 2961 Harrington, L., 2004. Ecology of crustose coralline algae; Interactions with scleractinian corals
2962 and responses to environmental conditions. James Cook University, Townsville, pp. 149.
- 2963 Harrington, L., Fabricius, K., De'ath, G., Negri, A., 2004. Recognition and Selection of
2964 Settlement Substrata Determine Post-Settlement Survival in Corals. *Ecology* 85, 3428-
2965 3437.
- 2966 Harriott, V.J., 1983. Reproductive ecology of four scleractinian species at Lizard Island, Great
2967 Barrier Reef. *Coral Reefs* 2, 9-18.
- 2968 Harriott, V.J., Fisk, D.A., 1987. A comparison of settlement plate types for experiments on the
2969 recruitment of scleractinian corals. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 37, 201-208.
- 2970 Harrison, P.L., 1988. Pseudo-gynodioecy: An unusual breeding system in the scleractinian
2971 coral *Galaxea fascicularis*. *Proceedings of the 6th International Coral Reef Symposium* 2,
2972 699-705.
- 2973 Harrison, P.L., 2008. Coral spawn slicks at Lord Howe Island, Tasman Sea, Australia; the
2974 world's most southerly coral reef. *Coral Reefs* 27, 35.
- 2975 Harrison, P.L., 2011. Sexual reproduction of scleractinian corals. In: Dubinsky, Z., Stambler,
2976 N. (Eds.), *Coral Reefs: An Ecosystem in Transition*. Springer Science+Business Media
2977 B.V., Dordrecht, pp. 59-85.
- 2978 Harrison, P.L., Wallace, C.C., 1990. Reproduction, dispersal and recruitment of scleractinian
2979 corals. In: Dubinsky, Z. (Ed.), *Ecosystems of the World 25: Coral Reefs*. Elsevier,
2980 Amsterdam, pp. 133-207.
- 2981 Harrison, P.L., Babcock, R.C., Bull, G.D., Oliver, J.K., Wallace, C.C., Willis, B.L., 1984. Mass
2982 spawning in tropical reef corals. *Science* 223, 1186-1189.

- 2983 Hart, J.R., 2012. Coral recruitment on a high-latitude reef at Sodwana Bay, South Africa:
2984 Research methods and dynamics. University of KwaZulu-Natal, pp. 67.
- 2985 Hart, J.R., Schleyer, M.H., 2016. Novel settlement tile design to facilitate the *in situ* detection
2986 of coral recruits. Reef Encounters 31, 43-45.
- 2987 Hartmann, A.C., Marhaver, K.L., Vermeij, M.J., 2018. Corals in healthy populations produce
2988 more larvae per unit cover. Conservation Letters 11, e12410.
- 2989 Hata, T., Madin, J.S., Cumbo, V.R., Denny, M., Figueiredo, J., Harii, S., Thomas, C.J., Baird,
2990 A.H., 2017. Coral larvae are poor swimmers and require fine-scale reef structure to settle.
2991 Scientific Reports 7, 2249.
- 2992 Hayashibara, T., Shimoike, K., Kimura, T., Hosaka, S., Heyward, A., Harrison, P., Kudo, K.,
2993 Omori, M., 1993. Patterns of coral spawning at Akajima Island, Okinawa, Japan. Marine
2994 Ecology Progress Series 101, 253-262.
- 2995 Hayman, S.V., 2015. Foraminiferal distribution in unconsolidated sediment associated with a
2996 marginal coral reef in South Africa. University of KwaZulu-Natal, pp. 137.
- 2997 Hedouin, L., Gates, R.D., 2013. Assessing fertilization success of the coral *Montipora capitata*
2998 under copper exposure: Does the night of spawning matter? Mar Pollut Bull 66, 221-224.
- 2999 Hedouin, L., Pilon, R., Puisay, A., 2015. Hyposalinity stress compromises the fertilization of
3000 gametes more than the survival of coral larvae. Mar Environ Res 104, 1-9.
- 3001 Heyward, A., Negri, A., 2012. Turbulence, cleavage, and the naked embryo: A case for coral
3002 clones. Science 335, 1064-1064.
- 3003 Heyward, A.J., Babcock, R.C., 1986. Self-fertilization and cross-fertilization in scleractinian
3004 corals. Marine Biology 90, 191-195.
- 3005 Heyward, A.J., Negri, A.P., 1999. Natural inducers for coral larval metamorphosis. Coral Reefs
3006 18, 273-279.
- 3007 Highsmith, R.C., 1982. Reproduction by fragmentation in corals. Marine Ecology Progress
3008 Series 7, 207-226.
- 3009 Hoegh-Guldberg, O., 1999. Climate change, coral bleaching and the future of the world's coral
3010 reefs. Marine and Freshwater Research 50, 839-866.
- 3011 Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Mumby, P.J., Hooten, A.J., Steneck, R.S., Greenfield, P., Gomez, E.,
3012 Harvell, C.D., Sale, P.F., Edwards, A.J., Caldeira, K., Knowlton, N., Eakin, C.M., Iglesias-
3013 Prieto, R., Muthiga, N., Bradbury, R.H., Dubi, A., Hatziolos, M.E., 2007. Coral reefs under
3014 rapid climate change and ocean acidification. Science 318, 1737-1742.
- 3015 Howells, E.J., Abrego, D., Vaughan, G.O., Burt, J.A., 2014. Coral spawning in the Gulf of
3016 Oman and relationship to latitudinal variation in spawning season in the northwest Indian
3017 Ocean. Scientific Reports 4, 7484.

- 3018 Hsu, C.M., de Palmas, S., Kuo, C.Y., Denis, V., Chen, C.A., 2014. Identification of
3019 scleractinian coral recruits using fluorescent censusing and DNA barcoding techniques.
3020 PLoS One 9, e107366.
- 3021 Hughes, T.P., Jackson, J.B.C., 1985. Population dynamics and life histories of foliaceous
3022 corals. *Ecological Monographs* 55, 141-166.
- 3023 Hughes, T.P., Tanner, J.E., 2000. Recruitment failure, life histories, and long-term decline of
3024 Caribbean corals. *Ecology* 81, 2250-2263.
- 3025 Hughes, T.P., Graham, N.A., Jackson, J.B., Mumby, P.J., Steneck, R.S., 2010. Rising to the
3026 challenge of sustaining coral reef resilience. *Trends Ecol Evol* 25, 633-642.
- 3027 Hughes, T.P., Baird, A.H., Dinsdale, E.A., Moltschaniwskyj, N.A., Pratchett, M.S., Tanner,
3028 J.E., Willis, B.L., 1999. Patterns of recruitment and abundance of corals along the Great
3029 Barrier Reef. *Nature* 397, 59-63.
- 3030 Hughes, T.P., Baird, A.H., Dinsdale, E.A., Harriott, V.J., Moltschaniwskyj, N.A., Pratchett,
3031 M.S., Tanner, J.E., Willis, B.L., 2002. Detecting regional variation using meta-analysis
3032 and large-scale sampling: Latitudinal patterns in recruitment. *Ecology* 83, 436-451.
- 3033 Hughes, T.P., Rodrigues, M.J., Bellwood, D.R., Ceccarelli, D., Hoegh-Guldberg, O., McCook,
3034 L., Moltschaniwskyj, N., Pratchett, M.S., 2007. Phase shifts, herbivory, and the resilience
3035 of coral reefs to climate change. *Current Biology* 17, 360-365.
- 3036 Hughes, T.P., Baird, A.H., Bellwood, D.R., Card, M., Connolly, S.R., C. Folke, R.G., Hoegh-
3037 Guldberg, O., Jackson, J.B.C., Kleypas, J., Lough, J.M., Marshall, P., M.Nyström,
3038 Palumbi, S.R., Pandolfi, J.M., Rosen, B., Roughgarden, J., 2003. Climate change, human
3039 impacts, and the resilience of coral reefs. *Science* 301, 929-933.
- 3040 Hughes, T.P., Kerry, J.T., Álvarez-Noriega, M., Álvarez-Romero, J.G., Anderson, K.D., Baird,
3041 A.H., Babcock, R.C., Bejer, M., Bellwood, D.R., Berkelmans, R., Bridge, T.C., Butler,
3042 I.R., Byrne, M., Cantin, N.E., Comeau, S., Connolly, S.R., Cumming, G.S., Dalton, S.J.,
3043 Diaz-Pulido, G., Eakin, C.M., Figueira, W.F., Gilmour, J.P., Harrison, H.B., Heron, S.F.,
3044 Hoey, A.S., Hobbs, J.-P.A., Hoogenboom, M.O., Kennedy, E.V., Kuo, C.-y., Lough, J.M.,
3045 Lowe, R.J., Liu, G., McCulloch, M.T., Malcolm, H.A., McWilliam, M.J., Pandolfi, J.M.,
3046 Pears, R.J., Pratchett, M.S., Schoepf, V., Simpson, T., Skirving, W.J., Sommer, B., Torda,
3047 G., Wachenfeld, D.R., Willis, B.L., Wilson, S.K., 2017. Global warming and recurrent
3048 mass bleaching of corals. *Nature* 543, 373-377.
- 3049 Humphrey, C., Weber, M., Lott, C., Cooper, T., Fabricius, K., 2008. Effects of suspended
3050 sediments, dissolved inorganic nutrients and salinity on fertilisation and embryo
3051 development in the coral *Acropora millepora* (Ehrenberg, 1834). *Coral Reefs* 27, 837-850.
- 3052 Hunte, W., Wittenberg, M., 1992. Effects of eutrophication and sedimentation on juvenile
3053 corals. II. Settlement. *Marine Biology* 114, 625-631.
- 3054 Hunter, I.T., 1988. Climate and weather off Natal. In: Schumann, E.B. (Ed.), *Coastal Ocean*
3055 *Studies off Natal, South Africa. Lecture Notes on Coastal and Estuarine Studies*, pp. 81-
3056 100.

- 3057 Hutchings, L., Beckley, L.E., Griffiths, M.H., Roberts, M.J., Sundby, S., van der Lingen, C.,
3058 2002. Spawning on the edge: Spawning grounds and nursery areas around the southern
3059 African coastline. *Marine and Freshwater Research* 53, 307-318.
- 3060 Iguchi, A., Suzuki, A., Sakai, K., Nojiri, Y., 2015. Comparison of the effects of thermal stress
3061 and CO₂-driven acidified seawater on fertilization in coral *Acropora digitifera*. *Zygote* 23,
3062 631-634.
- 3063 Iguchi, A., Morita, M., Nakajima, Y., Nishikawa, A., Miller, D., 2009. *In vitro* fertilization
3064 efficiency in coral *Acropora digitifera*. *Zygote* 17, 225-227.
- 3065 Iwao, K., Wada, N., Ohdera, A., Omori, M., 2014. How many donor colonies should be cross-
3066 fertilized for nursery farming of sexually propagated corals? *Natural Resources* 5, 521-526
- 3067 Jackson, J.B.C., 1991. Adaptation and diversity of reef corals. *Bioscience* 41, 475-482.
- 3068 Jiang, L., Lei, X.M., Liu, S., Huang, H., 2015. Fused embryos and pre-metamorphic conjoined
3069 larvae in a broadcast spawning reef coral. *F1000Research* 4, DOI:
3070 10.12688/f1000research.16136.12682.
- 3071 Johnson, C.R., Mann, K.H., 1986. The crustose coralline alga, *Phymatolithon* Foslie, inhibits
3072 the overgrowth of seaweeds without relying on herbivores. *Journal of Experimental*
3073 *Marine Biology and Ecology* 96, 127-146.
- 3074 Jokiell, P.L., 1985. Lunar periodicity of planula release in the reef coral *Pocillopora damicornis*
3075 in relation to various environmental factors. *Proceedings of the 5th International Coral Reef*
3076 *Congress, Tahiti* 4, 307-312.
- 3077 Jokiell, P.L., Morrissey, J.I., 1993. Water motion on coral reefs: evaluation of the 'clod card'
3078 technique. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 93, 175-181.
- 3079 Jokiell, P.L., Ito, R.Y., Liu, P.M., 1985. Night irradiance and synchronization of lunar release
3080 of planula larvae in the reef coral *Pocillopora damicornis*. *Marine Biology* 88, 167-174.
- 3081 Jones, R., Ricardo, G.F., Negri, A.P., 2015. Effects of sediments on the reproductive cycle of
3082 corals. *Mar Pollut Bull* 100, 13-33.
- 3083 Kariyazono, S.T., Hatta, M., 2015. Bail-out of the polyp from the skeleton of spats in the
3084 scleractinian coral *Acropora tenuis*. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral Reef Studies* 17, 19-20.
- 3085 Katsaros, K., Buettner, K.J.K., 1969. Influence of rainfall on temperature and salinity of the
3086 ocean surface. *Journal of Applied Meteorology* 8, 15-18.
- 3087 Keats, D.W., Chamberlain, Y.M., 1994a. Three species of *Hydrolithon* (Rhodophyta,
3088 Corallinaceae): *Hydrolithon onkodes* (Heydrich) Penrose and Woelkerling, *Hydrolithon*
3089 *superficiale* sp. nov. and *H. samoënsis* (Foslie) comb. nov. from South Africa. *South*
3090 *African Journal of Botany* 60, 8-21.
- 3091 Keats, D.W., Chamberlain, Y.M., 1994b. Two melobesioid coralline algae (Rhodophyta,
3092 Corallinales), *Mesophyllum erubescens* (Foslie) Lemoine and *Mesophyllum funafutiense*

- 3093 (Foslie) Verheij from Sodwana Bay, South Africa. South African Journal of Botany 60,
3094 175-190.
- 3095 Keith, S.A., Maynard, J.A., Edwards, A.J., Guest, J.R., Bauman, A.G., Hooiconk, R.v., Heron,
3096 S.F., Berumen, M.L., Bouwmeester, J., Pironvaragorn, S., Rahbek, C., Baird, A.H., 2016.
3097 Coral mass spawning predicted by rapid seasonal rise in ocean temperature. Proceedings
3098 of the Royal Society B 283, DOI: 10.1098/rspb.2016.0011.
- 3099 Kenkel, C.D., Traylor, M.R., Wiedenmann, J., Salih, A., Matz, M.V., 2011. Fluorescence of
3100 coral larvae predicts their settlement response to crustose coralline algae and reflects stress.
3101 Proceedings of the Royal Society B 278, 2691-2697.
- 3102 Keshavmurthy, S., Hsu, C.M., Kuo, C.Y., Denis, V., Leung, J.K.L., Fontana, S., Hsieh, H.J.,
3103 Tsai, W.S., Su, W.C., Chen, C.A., 2012. Larval development of fertilized "pseudo-
3104 gynodioecious" eggs suggests a sexual pattern of gynodioecy in *Galaxea fascicularis*
3105 (Scleractinia: Euphyllidae). Zoological Studies 51, 143-149.
- 3106 Kim, M.J., Choi, J.C., Kang, S.E., Cho, J.Y., Jin, H.J., Chun, B.S., Hong, Y.K., 2004. Multiple
3107 allelopathic activity of the crustose coralline alga *Lithophyllum yessoense* against
3108 settlement and germination of seaweed spores. Journal of Applied Phycology 16, 175-
3109 179.
- 3110 Kinzie III, R.A., 1993. Spawning in the reef corals *Pocillopora verrucosa* and *P. eydouxi* at
3111 Sesoko Island, Okinawa. Galaxea 11, 93-105.
- 3112 Kinzie III, R.A., 1999. Sex, symbiosis and coral reef communities. American Zoologist 39, 80-
3113 91.
- 3114 Kleypas, J.A., McManus, J.W., Menez, L.A.B., 1999. Environmental limits to coral reef
3115 development: Where do we draw the line. American Zoologist 39, 146-159.
- 3116 Knowlton, N., Jackson, J.B.C., 1993. Inbreeding and outbreeding in marine invertebrates. In:
3117 Thornhill, N. (Ed.), The Natural History of Inbreeding and Outbreeding. University of
3118 Chicago, Chicago, Illinois, pp. 200-249.
- 3119 Knowlton, N., Maté, J.L., Guzmán, H.M., Rowan, R., Jara, J., 1997. Direct evidence for
3120 reproductive isolation among the three species of the *Montastraea annularis* complex in
3121 Central America (Panama and Honduras). Marine Biology 127, 705-711.
- 3122 Kohler, K.E., Gill, S.M., 2006. Coral Point Count with Excel extensions (CPCe): A visual basic
3123 program for the determination of coral and substrate coverage using random point count
3124 methodology. Computers & Geosciences 32, 1259-1269.
- 3125 Kojis, B.L., 1986. Sexual Reproduction in Acropora (Isopora) Species (Coelenterata,
3126 Scleractinia) .1. Acropora-Cuneata and Acropora-Palifera on Heron Island Reef, Great-
3127 Barrier-Reef. Marine Biology 91, 291-309.
- 3128 Kojis, B.L., Quinn, N.J., 1984. Seasonal and depth variation in fecundity of *Acropora palifera*
3129 at two reefs in Papua New Guinea. Coral Reefs 3, 165-172.

- 3130 Korzen, L., Israel, A., Abelson, A., 2011. Grazing effects of fish versus sea urchins on turf
3131 algae and coral recruits: Possible implications for coral reef resilience and restoration.
3132 Journal of Marine Biology 2011, 1-8.
- 3133 Kruger, A., Schleyer, M.H., 1998. Sexual reproduction in the coral *Pocillopora verrucosa*
3134 (Cnidaria: Scleractinia) in KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. Marine Biology 132, 703-710.
- 3135 Kruger, A., Schleyer, M.H., Benayahu, Y., 1998. Reproduction in *Anthelia glauca*
3136 (Octocorallia: Xeniidae). I. Gametogenesis and larval brooding. Marine Biology 131, 423-
3137 432.
- 3138 Kuffner, I.B., Paul, V.J., 2004. Effects of the benthic cyanobacterium *Lyngbya majuscula* on
3139 larval recruitment of the reef corals *Acropora surculosa* and *Pocillopora damicornis*.
3140 Coral Reefs 23, 455-458.
- 3141 Kuffner, I.B., Walters, L.J., Becerro, M.A., Paul, V.J., Ritson-Williams, R., Beach, K.S., 2006.
3142 Inhibition of coral recruitment by macroalgae and cyanobacteria. Marine Ecology Progress
3143 Series 323, 107–117.
- 3144 Laing, S.C.S., 2013. An economic valuation of the coral reefs of Sodwana Bay, northern
3145 KwaZulu-Natal. University of KwaZulu-Natal, pp. 109.
- 3146 Lam, E.K.Y., Chui, A.P.Y., Kwok, C.K., Ip, A.H.P., Chan, S.W., Leung, H.N., Yeung, L.C.,
3147 Ang, P.O., 2015. High levels of inorganic nutrients affect fertilization kinetics, early
3148 development and settlement of the scleractinian coral *Platygyra acuta*. Coral Reefs 34,
3149 837-848.
- 3150 Lam, V.Y.Y., Doropoulos, C., Mumby, P.J., 2017. The influence of resilience-based
3151 management on coral reef monitoring: A systematic review. PLoS One 12, e0172064.
- 3152 Lee, C.S., Walford, J., Goh, B.P.L., 2009. Adding coral rubble to substrata enhances settlement
3153 of *Pocillopora damicornis* larvae. Coral Reefs 28, 529–533.
- 3154 Levitan, D.R., Petersen, C., 1995. Sperm limitation in the sea. Trends in Ecology & Evolution
3155 10, 228-231.
- 3156 Levitan, D.R., Fukami, H., Jara, J., Kline, D., McGovern, T.M., McGhee, K.E., Swanson, C.A.,
3157 Knowlton, N., 2004. Mechanisms of reproductive isolation among sympatric broadcast-
3158 spawning corals of the *Montastraea annularis* species complex. Evolution 58, 308-323.
- 3159 Levy, O., Appelbaum, L., Leggat, W., Gothlif, Y., Hayward, D.C., Miller, D.J., Hoegh-
3160 Guldberg, O., 2007. Light-responsive cryptochromes from a simple multicellular animal,
3161 the coral *Acropora millepora*. Science 318, 467-470.
- 3162 Lewis, J., 1974. The settlement behavior of planulae larvae of the hermatypic coral *Favia*
3163 *fragum* (Esper). Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 15, 165-172.
- 3164 Lirman, D., 2001. Competition between macroalgae and corals: Effects of herbivore exclusion
3165 and increased algal biomass on coral survivorship and growth. Coral Reefs 19, 392-399.

- 3166 Loya, Y., Rinkevich, B., 1980. Effects of oil pollution on coral reef communities. *Mar. Ecol.*
3167 *Prog. Ser.* 3, 167-180.
- 3168 Loya, Y., Sakai, K., 2008. Bidirectional sex change in mushroom stony corals. *Proceedings of*
3169 *the Royal Society B* 275, 2335-2343.
- 3170 Lutjeharms, J.R.E., 2006. *The Agulhas Current*. Springer-Verlag Berlin Heidelberg.
- 3171 Maida, M., Coll, J.C., Sammarco, P.W., 1994. Shedding new light on scleractinian coral
3172 recruitment. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 180, 189-202.
- 3173 Maida, M., Sammarco, P.W., Coll, J.C., 1995. Effects of soft corals on scleractinian coral
3174 recruitment. I: Directional allelopathy and inhibition of settlement. *Marine Ecology*
3175 *Progress Series* 121, 191-202.
- 3176 Maneveldt, G.W., Chamberlain, Y.M., Keats, D.W., 2008. A catalogue with keys to the non-
3177 geniculate coralline algae (Corallinales, Rhodophyta) of South Africa. *South African*
3178 *Journal of Botany* 74, 555–566.
- 3179 Mangubhai, S., 2009. Reproductive ecology of the scleractinian corals *Echinopora gemmacea*
3180 and *Leptoria phrygia* (Faviidae) on equatorial reefs in Kenya. *Invertebrate Reproduction*
3181 *and Development* 53, 67–79.
- 3182 Mangubhai, S., Harrison, P.L., 2008. Gametogenesis, spawning and fecundity of *Platygyra*
3183 *daedalea* (Scleractinia) on equatorial reefs in Kenya. *Coral Reefs* 27, 117–122.
- 3184 Mangubhai, S., Harris, A., Graham, N.A.J., 2007a. Synchronous daytime spawning of the
3185 solitary coral *Fungia danai* (Fungiidae) in the Chagos Archipelago, central Indian Ocean.
3186 *Coral Reefs* 26, 15-15.
- 3187 Mangubhai, S., Harrison, P.L., Obura, D.O., 2007b. Patterns of coral larval settlement on
3188 lagoon reefs in the Mombasa Marine National Park and Reserve, Kenya. *Marine Ecology*
3189 *Progress Series* 348, 149-159.
- 3190 Marshall, D.J., 2006. Reliably estimating the effect of toxicants on fertilization success in
3191 marine broadcast spawners. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 52, 734–738.
- 3192 Martinez, S., Abelson, A., 2013. Coral recruitment: the critical role of early post-settlement
3193 survival. *ICES Journal of Marine Science* 70, 1294-1298.
- 3194 Mason, B., Beard, M., Miller, M.W., 2011. Coral larvae settle at a higher frequency on red
3195 surfaces. *Coral Reefs* 30, 667-676.
- 3196 Massé, L.M., 2014. Comparison of scleractinian coral reproduction and recruitment on tropical
3197 (Reunion) and subtropical (South Africa) reefs in the south Western Indian Ocean.
3198 *Universite de le Reunion*, pp. 172.
- 3199 Massé, L.M., Chabanet, P., Schleyer, M.H., 2013. Spawning behaviour in *Platygyra daedalea*
3200 off South Africa. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral Reef Studies* 15, 13-14.

- 3201 Massé, L.M., Séré, M.G., Smit, A.J., Schleyer, M.H., 2012. Sexual Reproduction in
3202 *Pocillopora damicornis* at high latitude off South Africa. West Indian Ocean Journal of
3203 Marine Science 11, 55-65.
- 3204 Maud, R.R., 1980. The climate and geology of Maputaland. In: Bruton, M.N., Cooper, K.H.
3205 (Eds.), Studies on the Ecology of Maputaland Wildlife Society of South Africa, Durban
3206 pp. 1-7.
- 3207 Mazel, C.H., 2005. Underwater fluorescence photography in the presence of ambient light.
3208 Limnology and Oceanography Methods 3, 499–510.
- 3209 McClanahan, T.R., Donner, S.D., Maynard, J.A., MacNeil, M.A., Graham, N.A.J., Maina, J.,
3210 Baker, A.C., Alemu I, J.B., Beger, M., Campbell, S.J., Darling, E.S., Eakin, C.M., Heron,
3211 S.F., Jupiter, S.D., Lundquist, C.J., McLeod, E., Mumby, P.J., Paddock, M.J., Selig, E.R.,
3212 van Woessik, R., 2012. Prioritizing key resilience indicators to support coral reef
3213 management in a changing climate. PLoS One 7, e42884.
- 3214 McCook, L.J., Jompa, J., Diaz-Pulido, G., 2001. Competition between corals and algae on coral
3215 reefs: A review of evidence and mechanisms. Coral Reefs 19, 400-417.
- 3216 McCormick, M.I., 2003. Consumption of coral propagules after mass spawning enhances larval
3217 quality of damselfish through maternal effects. Oecologia 136, 37-45.
- 3218 Mendes, J.M., Woodley, J.D., 2002. Timing of reproduction in *Montastraea annularis*:
3219 Relationship to environmental variables. Marine Ecology Progress Series 227, 241-251.
- 3220 Mercurio, P., Negri, A.P., Burns, K.A., Heyward, A.J., 2004. The ecotoxicology of vegetable
3221 versus mineral based lubricating oils: 3. Coral fertilization and adult corals. Environmental
3222 Pollution 129, 183-194.
- 3223 Miller, K., Mundy, C., 2003. Rapid settlement in broadcast spawning corals: Implications for
3224 larval dispersal. Coral Reefs 22, 99-106.
- 3225 Mitchell, J., Jury, M.R., Mulder, G.J., 2005. A study of Maputaland beach dynamics. South
3226 African Geographical Journal 87, 43-51.
- 3227 Moberg, F., Folke, C., 1999. Ecological goods and services of coral reef ecosystems.
3228 Ecological Economics 29, 215-233.
- 3229 Moláček, J., Denny, M., Bush, J.W.M., 2012. The fine art of surfacing: Its efficacy in broadcast
3230 spawning. Journal of Theoretical Biology 294, 40-47.
- 3231 Montoya-Maya, P.H., 2014. Ecological genetic connectivity between and within southeast
3232 African marginal coral reefs University of KwaZulu-Natal, Durban, South Africa, pp. 151.
- 3233 Montoya-Maya, P.H., Macdonald, A.H.H., Schleyer, M.H., 2014. Estimation of size at first
3234 maturity in two South African coral species. African Journal of Marine Science 36, 513-
3235 516.

- 3236 Montoya-Maya, P.H., Schleyer, M.H., Macdonald, A.H.H., 2016. Limited ecologically
3237 relevant genetic connectivity in the south-east African coral populations calls for reef-level
3238 management. *Marine Biology* 163, 1-16.
- 3239 Mora, C., Graham, N.A.J., Nyström, M., 2016. Ecological limitations to the resilience of coral
3240 reefs. *Coral Reefs* 35, 1271-1280.
- 3241 Morita, M., Nishikawa, A., Nakajima, A., Iguchi, A., Sakai, K., Takemura, A., Okuno, M.,
3242 2006. Eggs regulate sperm flagellar motility initiation, chemotaxis and inhibition in the
3243 coral *Acropora digitifera*, *A. gemmifera* and *A. tenuis*. *The Journal of Experimental*
3244 *Biology* 209, 4574-4579.
- 3245 Morris, T., 2009. Physical oceanography of Sodwana Bay and its effect on larval transport and
3246 coral bleaching, *Oceanography*. Cape Peninsular University of Technology, Cape Town,
3247 pp. 79.
- 3248 Morse, A.N.C., Morse, D.E., 1996. Flypapers for coral and other planktonic larvae. *Bioscience*
3249 46, 254-262.
- 3250 Morse, A.N.C., Iwao, K., Baba, M., Shimoike, K., Hayashiraba, T., Omori, M., 1996. An
3251 ancient chemosensory mechanism brings new life to coral reefs. *Biological Bulletin* 191,
3252 149-154.
- 3253 Morse, D.E., Morse, A.N.C., 1991. Enzymatic characterization of the morphogen recognized
3254 by *Agaricia humilis* (scleractinian coral) larvae. *Biological Bulletin* 181, 104-122.
- 3255 Morse, D.E., Hooker, N., Morse, A.N.C., Jensen, R.A., 1988. Control of larval metamorphosis
3256 and recruitment in sympatric agariciid corals. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*
3257 *Ecology* 116, 193-217.
- 3258 Muller, E., Vermeij, M.J.A., 2011. Day time spawning of a Caribbean coral. *Coral Reefs* 30,
3259 1147.
- 3260 Mumby, P.J., 2009. Phase shifts and the stability of macroalgal communities on Caribbean
3261 coral reefs. *Coral Reefs* 28, 761-773.
- 3262 Mumby, P.J., Harborne, A.R., 2010. Marine reserves enhance the recovery of corals on
3263 Caribbean Reefs. *PLoS One* 5.
- 3264 Mumby, P.J., Steneck, R.S., Adjeroud, M., Arnold, S.N., 2015. High resilience masks
3265 underlying sensitivity to algal phase shifts of Pacific coral reefs. *Oikos* 125, 644-655.
- 3266 Mumby, P.J., Harborne, A.R., Williams, J., Kappel, C.V., Brumbaugh, D.R., Micheli, F.,
3267 Holmes, K.E., Dahlgren, C.P., Paris, C.B., Blackwell, P.G., 2007. Trophic cascade
3268 facilitates coral recruitment in a marine reserve. *Proceedings of the National Academy of*
3269 *Sciences of the United States of America* 104, 8362-8367.
- 3270 Munbodh, M., Chineah, V., Mosaheb, J.I., Paupiah, C.N., Mangar, V., Luchmun, J.P., Rowjee,
3271 P., Samyan, C., Bookun, V., Nojima, S., Terashima, H., 1999. Observation of coral
3272 spawning in the lagoon of Mauritius. *Western Indian Ocean Waters* 10, 1-2.

- 3273 Mundy, C.N., 2000. An appraisal of methods used in coral recruitment studies. *Coral Reefs* 19,
3274 124-131.
- 3275 Mundy, C.N., Babcock, R.C., 1998a. Role of light intensity and spectral quality in coral
3276 settlement: Implications for depth-dependent settlement? *Journal of Experimental Marine*
3277 *Biology and Ecology* 223, 235-255.
- 3278 Mundy, C.N., Babcock, R.C., 1998b. Role of light intensity and spectral quality in coral
3279 settlement: Implications for depth-dependent settlement? *Journal of Experimental Marine*
3280 *Biology and Ecology* 223, 235–255.
- 3281 Mwachireya, S.A., McClanahan, T.R., Hartwick, B.E., Cote, I.M., Lesack, L., 2015. Effects of
3282 river sediments on coral recruitment, algal abundance benthic community structure on
3283 Kenyan coral reefs. *African Journal of Environmental Science and Technology* 9, 615-
3284 631.
- 3285 Negri, A., Vollhardt, C., Humphrey, C., Heyward, A., Jones, R., Eaglesham, G., Fabricius, K.,
3286 2005. Effects of the herbicide diuron on the early life history stages of coral. *Marine*
3287 *Pollution Bulletin* 51, 370-383.
- 3288 Negri, A.P., Marshall, P.A., Heyward, A.J., 2007. Differing effects of thermal stress on coral
3289 fertilization and early embryogenesis in four Indo Pacific species. *Coral Reefs* 26, 759-
3290 763.
- 3291 Negri, A.P., Webster, N.S., Hill, R.T., Heyward, A.J., 2001. Metamorphosis of broadcast
3292 spawning corals in response to bacteria isolated from crustose algae. *Marine Ecology*
3293 *Progress Series* 223, 121-131.
- 3294 Negri, A.P., Brinkman, D.L., Flores, F., Botté, E.S., Jones, R.J., Webster, N.S., 2016. Acute
3295 ecotoxicology of natural oil and gas condensate to coral reef larvae. *Scientific reports* 6,
3296 21153.
- 3297 Nishikawa, A., Sakai, K., 2005. Settlement-competency period of planulae and genetic
3298 differentiation of the scleractinian coral *Acropora digitifera*. *Zoolog Sci* 22, 391-399.
- 3299 Noreen, A.M.E., Harrison, P.L., Van Oppen, M.J.H., 2009. Genetic diversity and connectivity
3300 in a brooding reef coral at the limit of its distribution. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B*
3301 276, 3927-3935.
- 3302 Nozawa, Y., 2008. Micro-crevice structure enhances coral spat survivorship. *Journal of*
3303 *Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 367, 127-130.
- 3304 Nozawa, Y., 2010. Survivorship of fast growing coral spats depend less on refuge structure:
3305 the case of *Acropora solitaryensis*. *Galaxea, Journal of Coral Reef Studies* 12, 31-36.
- 3306 Nozawa, Y., 2012a. Effective size of refugia for coral spat survival. *Journal of Experimental*
3307 *Marine Biology and Ecology* 413, 145-149.
- 3308 Nozawa, Y., 2012b. Annual variation in the timing of coral spawning in a high-latitude
3309 environment: Influence of temperature. *Biological Bulletin* 222, 192-202.

- 3310 Nozawa, Y., Harrison, P.L., 2000. Larval settlement patterns, dispersal potential, and the
3311 effects of temperature on settlement of larvae of the reef coral, *Platygyra daedalea*, from
3312 the Great Barrier Reef, Proceedings of the 9th International Coral Reef Symposium, Bali,
3313 Indonesia, pp. 409-415.
- 3314 Nozawa, Y., Harrison, P.L., 2005. Temporal settlement patterns of larvae of the broadcast
3315 spawning reef coral *Favites chinensis* and the broadcast spawning and brooding reef coral
3316 *Goniastrea aspera* from Okinawa, Japan. *Coral Reefs* 24, 274-282.
- 3317 Nozawa, Y., Okubo, N., 2011. Survival dynamics of reef coral larvae with special
3318 consideration of larval size and the genus *Acropora*. *Biological Bulletin* 220, 15-22.
- 3319 Nozawa, Y., Lin, C.H., 2014. Effects of colony size and polyp position on polyp fecundity in
3320 the scleractinian coral genus *Acropora*. *Coral Reefs* 33, 1057-1066.
- 3321 Nozawa, Y., Tokeshi, M., Nojima, S., 2006. Reproduction and recruitment of scleractinian
3322 corals in a high-latitude coral community, Amakusa, southwestern Japan. *Marine Biology*
3323 149, 1047–1058.
- 3324 Nozawa, Y., Tanaka, K., Reimer, J.D., 2011. Reconsideration of the surface structure of
3325 settlement plates used in coral recruitment studies. *Zoological Studies* 50, 53-60.
- 3326 Nozawa, Y., Isomura, N., Fukami, H., 2015. Influence of sperm dilution and gamete contact
3327 time on the fertilization rate of scleractinian corals. *Coral Reefs* 34, 1199-1206.
- 3328 Nugues, M.M., Szmant, A.M., 2006. Coral settlement onto *Halimeda opuntia*: A fatal attraction
3329 to an ephemeral substrate? *Coral Reefs* 25, 585-591.
- 3330 Nzali, L.M., Johnstone, R.W., Mgaya, Y., 1998. Factors affecting scleractinian coral
3331 recruitment on a nearshore reef in Tanzania. *Ambio* 27, 717-722.
- 3332 O'Leary, J.K., Potts, D.C., 2011. Using hierarchical sampling to understand scales of spatial
3333 variation in early coral recruitment. *Coral Reefs* 30, 1013-1023.
- 3334 O'Leary, J.K., McClanahan, T.R., 2010. Trophic cascades result in large-scale coralline algae
3335 loss through differential grazer effects. *Ecology* 91, 3584-3597.
- 3336 O'Leary, J.K., Potts, D.C., Braga, J.C., McClanahan, T.R., 2012. Indirect consequences of
3337 fishing: reduction of coralline algae suppresses juvenile coral abundance. *Coral Reefs* 31,
3338 547-559.
- 3339 O'Leary, J.K., Potts, D., Schoenrock, K.M., McClanahan, T.R., 2013. Fish and sea urchin
3340 grazing opens settlement space equally but urchins reduce survival of coral recruits.
3341 *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 493, 165-177.
- 3342 Obura, D.O., 2001. Can differential bleaching and mortality among coral species offer useful
3343 indicators for assessment and management of reefs under stress? *Bull. Mar. Sci.* 69, 421-
3344 442.
- 3345 Okubo, N., Taniguchi, H., Motokawa, T., 2005. Successful methods for transplanting
3346 fragments of *Acropora formosa* and *Acropora hyacinthus*. *Coral Reefs* 24, 333-342.

- 3347 Okubo, N., Taniguchi, H., Omori, M., 2009. Sexual Reproduction in Transplanted Coral
3348 Fragments of *Acropora nasuta*. Zoological Studies 48, 442-447.
- 3349 Olbers, J.M., Celliers, L., Schleyer, M.H., 2009. Zonation of benthic communities on the
3350 subtropical Aliwal Shoal, Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, South Africa. African Zoology 44, 8-
3351 23.
- 3352 Oliver, J., Babcock, R., 1992. Aspects of the fertilization ecology of broadcast spawning corals:
3353 Sperm dilution effects and *in situ* measurements of fertilization. Biological Bulletin 183,
3354 409-417.
- 3355 Omori, M., Fukami, H., Kobinata, H., Hatta, M., 2001. Significant drop of fertilization of
3356 *Acropora* corals in 1999. An after-effect of heavy coral bleaching? Limnology and
3357 Oceanography 46, 704-706.
- 3358 Padilla-Gamiño, J.L., Weatherby, T.M., Waller, R.G., Gates, R.D., 2011. Formation and
3359 structural organization of the egg-sperm bundle of the scleractinian coral *Montipora*
3360 *capitata*. Coral Reefs 30, 371-380.
- 3361 Page, C.A., Muller, E.M., Vaughan, D.E., 2018. Microfragmenting for the successful
3362 restoration of slow growing massive corals. Ecological Engineering 123, 86-94.
- 3363 Palaki, A., 1998. The effect of salinity on fertilization and larval survivorship and settlement
3364 in *Fungia scutaria* and *Pocillopora damicornis*. In: Cox, E.F., Krupp, D.A., Jokiel, P.L.
3365 (Eds.), Reproduction in Reef Corals: Results of the 1997 Edwin W. Pauley Summer
3366 Program in Marine Biology, Hawaii Institute of Marine Biology, Kaneohe, HI. HIMB
3367 Technical Report 42, pp. 68-77.
- 3368 Pandolfi, J.M., Bradbury, R.H., Sala, E., Hughes, T.P., Bjorndal, K.A., Cooke, R.G., McArdle,
3369 D., McClenachan, L., Newman, M.J., Paredes, G., Warner, R.R., Jackson, J.B., 2003.
3370 Global trajectories of the long-term decline of coral reef ecosystems. Science 301, 955-
3371 958.
- 3372 Patterson, J.T., Flint, M., Than, J., Watson, C.A., 2016. Evaluation of substrate properties for
3373 settlement of Caribbean staghorn coral *Acropora cervicornis* larvae in a land-based
3374 system. North American Journal of Aquaculture 78, 337-345.
- 3375 Penin, L., Michonneau, F., Carroll, A., Adjeroud, M., 2011. Effects of predators and grazers
3376 exclusion on early post-settlement coral mortality. Hydrobiologia 663, 259-264.
- 3377 Penin, L., Michonneau, F., Baird, A.H., Connolly, S.R., Pratchett, M.S., Kayal, M., Adjeroud,
3378 M., 2010. Early post-settlement mortality and the structure of coral assemblages. Marine
3379 Ecology Progress Series 408, 55-64.
- 3380 Penland, L., Kloulechad, J., Idip, D., van Woesik, R., 2004. Coral spawning in the western
3381 Pacific Ocean is related to solar insolation: Evidence of multiple spawning events in Palau.
3382 Coral Reefs 23, 133-140.
- 3383 Penrose, D., Chamberlain, Y.M., 1993. *Hydrolithon farinosum* (Lamouroux) comb. nov.:
3384 Implications for generic concepts in the Mastophoroideae (Corallinaceae, Rhodophyta).
3385 Phycologia 32, 295-303.

- 3386 Perry, C.T., 2003. Coral reefs in a high-latitude, siliciclastic barrier island setting: Reef
3387 framework and sediment production at Inhaca Island, southern Mozambique. *Coral Reefs*
3388 22, 485-497.
- 3389 Petersen, D., Laterveer, M., Schuhmacher, H., 2004. Innovative substrate tiles to spatially
3390 control larval settlement in coral culture. *Marine Biology* 146, 937-942.
- 3391 Piniak, G.A., Fogarty, N.D., Addison, C.M., Kenworthy, W.J., 2005. Fluorescence census
3392 techniques for coral recruits. *Coral Reefs* 24, 496-500.
- 3393 Porter, S.N., Schleyer, M.H., 2017. Long-term dynamics of a high-latitude coral reef
3394 community at Sodwana Bay, South Africa. *Coral Reefs*, 1-14.
- 3395 Porter, S.N., Schleyer, M.H., Sink, K.J., Pearton, D., 2018. South African National Chapter. In:
3396 Gudka, M., Obura, D., Mwaura, J., Porter, S., Yahya, S., Mabwa, R. (Ed.), *Impact of the*
3397 *3rd Global Coral Bleaching Event on the Western Indian Ocean in 2016. Global Coral*
3398 *Reef Monitoring Network (GCRMN)/Indian Ocean Commission*, pp. 67.
- 3399 Pratchett, M.S., Baird, A.H., Marquis, C.P., 2000. Comparative palatability among eggs of
3400 mass-spawning corals. *Proceedings 9th International Coral Reef Symposium, Bali,*
3401 *Indonesia*, 23-27.
- 3402 Pratchett, M.S., Gust, N., Goby, G., Klanten, S.O., 2001. Consumption of coral propagules
3403 represents a significant trophic link between corals and reef fish. *Coral Reefs* 20, 13-17.
- 3404 Qian, P.Y., Lau, S.C., Dahms, H.U., Dobretsov, S., Harder, T., 2007. Marine biofilms as
3405 mediators of colonization by marine macroorganisms: Implications for antifouling and
3406 aquaculture. *Marine Biotechnology* 9, 399-410.
- 3407 Quéré, G., Nugues, M.M., 2015. Coralline algae disease reduces survival and settlement
3408 success of coral planulae in laboratory experiments. *Coral Reefs* 34, 863-870.
- 3409 Raimondi, P.T., Morse, A.N.C., 2000. The consequences of complex larval behavior in a coral.
3410 *Ecology* 81, 3193-3211.
- 3411 Ramsay, P.J., 1991. Sedimentology, coral reef zonation, and late pleistocene coastline models
3412 of the Sodwana Bay continental shelf, northern Zululand. University of Natal, pp. 202.
- 3413 Ramsay, P.J., 1994. Marine geology of the Sodwana Bay shelf, southeast Africa. *Marine*
3414 *Geology* 120, 225-247.
- 3415 Ramsay, P.J., 1996. Quaternary marine geology of the Sodwana Bay continental shelf, northern
3416 KwaZulu-Natal. *Bulletin of the Geological Survey of South Africa* 117, 1-86.
- 3417 Ramsay, P.J., Mason, T.R., 1990. Development of a type zoning model for Zululand coral
3418 reefs, Sodwana Bay, South Africa. *Journal of Coastal Research* 6, 829-852.
- 3419 Ramsay, P.J., Cohen, A.L., 1997. Coral palaeoclimatology research on the southeast African
3420 shelf. *Proceedings of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium, Panama* 2, 1731-1734.

- 3421 Randall, C.J., Szmant, A.M., 2009. Elevated temperature reduces survivorship and settlement
3422 of the larvae of the Caribbean scleractinian coral, *Favia fragum* (Esper). *Coral Reefs* 28,
3423 537-545.
- 3424 Raymundo, L.J., Maypa, A.P., 2004. Getting bigger faster: Mediation of size-specific mortality
3425 via fusion in juvenile coral. *Ecological Applications* 14, 281-295.
- 3426 Ricardo, G.F., Jones, R.J., Clode, P.L., Humanes, A., Negri, A.P., 2015. Suspended sediments
3427 limit coral sperm availability. *Scientific Reports* 5, DOI:10.1038/srep18084.
- 3428 Richmond, R.H., 1985. Reversible metamorphosis in coral planula larvae. *Marine Ecology*
3429 *Progress Series* 22, 181-185.
- 3430 Richmond, R.H., 1993. Coral reefs: Present problems and future concerns resulting from
3431 anthropogenic disturbance. *Am. Zool.* 33, 524-536.
- 3432 Richmond, R.H., 1997. Reproduction and recruitment in corals: Critical links in the persistence
3433 of reefs. In: Birkeland, C. (Ed.), *Life and Death of Coral Reefs*. Chapman & Hall, New
3434 York, pp. 175-197.
- 3435 Richmond, R.H., Hunter, C.L., 1990. Reproduction and recruitment of corals: Comparisons
3436 among the Caribbean, the Tropical Pacific, and the Red Sea. *Marine Ecology Progress*
3437 *Series* 60, 185-203.
- 3438 Riegl, B., 2001. Inhibition of reef framework by frequent disturbance: Examples from the
3439 Arabian Gulf, South Africa, and the Cayman Islands. *Palaeogeography,*
3440 *Palaeoclimatology, Palaeoecology* 175, 79-101.
- 3441 Riegl, B., 2003. Climate change and coral reefs: Different effects in two high-latitude areas
3442 (Arabian Gulf, South Africa). *Coral Reefs* 22, 433-446.
- 3443 Riegl, B., Cook, P.A., 1995. Is damage susceptibility linked to coral community structure? A
3444 case study from South Africa. *Beiträge zur Paläontologie* 20, 65-73.
- 3445 Riegl, B., Riegl, A., 1996. The effect of episodic coral breakage on community structure: A
3446 case study from South Africa. *Marine Ecology* 17, 399-410.
- 3447 Riegl, B., Piller, W.E., 2003. Possible refugia for reefs in times of environmental stress.
3448 *International Journal of Earth Science* 92, 520-531.
- 3449 Riegl, B., Schleyer, M.H., Cook, P.J., Branch, G.M., 1995. Structure of Africa's southernmost
3450 coral communities. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 56, 676-691.
- 3451 Rinkevich, B., 1995. Restoration strategies for coral reefs damaged by recreational activities:
3452 The use of sexual and asexual recruits. *Restoration Ecology* 3, 241-251.
- 3453 Rinkevich, B., 1996. Do reproduction and regeneration in damaged corals compete for energy
3454 allocation? *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 143, 297-302.
- 3455 Rinkevich, B., 2014. Rebuilding coral reefs: Does active reef restoration lead to sustainable
3456 reefs? *Current Opinion in Environmental Sustainability* 7, 28-36.

- 3457 Ritson-Williams, R., Paul, V.J., Arnold, S.N., Steneck, R.S., 2010. Larval settlement
3458 preferences and post-settlement survival of the threatened Caribbean corals *Acropora*
3459 *palmata* and *A. cervicornis*. *Coral Reefs* 29, 71-81.
- 3460 Ritson-Williams, R., Arnold, S.N., Paul, V.J., Steneck, R.S., 2014. Larval settlement
3461 preferences of *Acropora palmata* and *Montastraea faveolata* in response to diverse red
3462 algae. *Coral Reefs* 33, 59-66.
- 3463 Ritson-Williams, R., Arnold, S.N., Fogarty, N.D., Steneck, R.S., Vermeij, M.J.A., Paul, V.J.,
3464 2009. New perspectives on ecological mechanisms affecting coral recruitment on reefs.
3465 *Smithsonian Contributions to the Marine Sciences* 38, 437-457.
- 3466 Roeroe, K.A., Yap, M., Okamoto, M., 2013. Development of new assessment methods for
3467 *Acropora* coral recruitment using coral settlement devices and holes of marine block.
3468 *Fisheries Science* 79, 617-627.
- 3469 Roff, G., Doropoulos, C., Zupan, M., Rogers, A., Steneck, R.S., Golbuu, Y., Mumby, P.J.,
3470 2015. Phase shift facilitation following cyclone disturbance on coral reefs. *Oecologia* 178,
3471 1193-1203.
- 3472 Rogers, C.S., III, H.C.F., Gilnack, M., Beets, J., Hardin, J., 1984. Scleractinian coral
3473 recruitment patterns at Salt River Submarine Canyon, St. Croix, U.S. Virgin Islands. *Coral*
3474 *Reefs* 3, 69-76.
- 3475 Roth, M.S., Knowlton, N., 2009. Distribution, abundance, and microhabitat characterization of
3476 small juvenile corals at Palmyra Atoll. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 376, 133-142.
- 3477 Rylaarsdam, K.W., 1983. Life histories and abundance patterns of colonial corals on Jamaican
3478 reefs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 13, 249-260.
- 3479 Sammarco, P.W., 1980. *Diadema* and its relationship to coral spat mortality: Grazing,
3480 competition, and biological disturbance. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and*
3481 *Ecology* 45, 245-272.
- 3482 Sammarco, P.W., 1982. Polyp bail-out: An escape response to environmental stress and a new
3483 means of reproduction in corals. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 10, 57-65.
- 3484 Sammarco, P.W., Carleton, J., 1981. Damsel fish territoriality and coral community structure:
3485 Reduced grazing, coral recruitment, and effects on coral spat. *Proceedings of the 4th*
3486 *International Coral Reef Symposium, Manila* 2, 525-535.
- 3487 Schleyer, M.H., 1999. A synthesis of KwaZulu-Natal coral research. *Oceanographic Research*
3488 *Institute*, pp. 36.
- 3489 Schleyer, M.H., 2000. South African coral communities. In: McClanahan, T.R., Sheppard,
3490 C.R.C., Obura, D.O. (Eds.), *Coral Reefs of the Indian Ocean: Their Ecology and*
3491 *Conservation*. Oxford University Press, Oxford, pp. 83-105.
- 3492 Schleyer, M.H., Tomalin, B.J., 2000. Damage on South African coral reefs and an assessment
3493 of their sustainable diving capacity using a fisheries approach. *Bulletin of Marine Science*
3494 67, 1025-1042.

- 3495 Schleyer, M.H., Celliers, L., 2003. Biodiversity on the marginal coral reefs of South Africa:
3496 What does the future hold? *Zoologische Verhandelingen* 345, 387-400.
- 3497 Schleyer, M.H., Kruger, A., Benayahu, Y., 1997. Reproductive strategies of South African
3498 corals. In: den Hartog, J.C. (Ed.), *Proceedings of the 6th International Conference on*
3499 *Coelenterate Biology. The Leeuwenhorst-Noordwijkerhout, Nationaal Natuurhistorisch*
3500 *Museum. Leiden, pp. 429-435.*
- 3501 Schleyer, M.H., Kruger, A., Benayahu, Y., 2004. Reproduction and the unusual condition of
3502 hermaphroditism in *Sarcophyton glaucum* (Octocorallia, Alcyoniidae) in KwaZulu-Natal,
3503 South Africa. *Hydrobiologia* 530, 399-409.
- 3504 Schleyer, M.H., Heikoop, J.M., Risk, M.J., 2006. A benthic survey of Aliwal Shoal and
3505 assessment of the effects of a wood pulp effluent on the reef. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* 52,
3506 503-514.
- 3507 Schleyer, M.H., Kruger, A., Celliers, L., 2008. Long-term community changes on a high-
3508 latitude coral reef in the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park, South Africa. *Marine Pollution*
3509 *Bulletin* 56, 493-502.
- 3510 Scott, A., Harrison, P.L., Brooks, L.O., 2013. Reduced salinity decreases the fertilization
3511 success and larval survival of two scleractinian coral species. *Mar Environ Res* 92, 10-14.
- 3512 Séré, M.G., Massé, L.M., Perissinotto, R., Schleyer, M., 2010. Influence of heterotrophic
3513 feeding on the sexual reproduction of *Pocillopora verrucosa* in aquaria. *J. Exp. Mar. Biol.*
3514 *Ecol.* 395, 63-71.
- 3515 Shearer, T.L., Porto, I., Zubillaga, A.L., 2009. Restoration of coral populations in light of
3516 genetic diversity estimates. *Coral Reefs* 28, 727-733.
- 3517 Sheppard, C., Turak, E., Wood, E., 2014. *Hydnophora exesa*. The IUCN Red List of
3518 Threatened Species. [http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2014-](http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2014-1.RLTS.T133478A54269781.en)
3519 [1.RLTS.T133478A54269781.en](http://dx.doi.org/10.2305/IUCN.UK.2014-1.RLTS.T133478A54269781.en). Downloaded on 13 November 2016,
3520 e.T133478A54269781.
- 3521 Sier, C.J.S., Olive, P.J.W., 1994. Reproduction and reproductive variability in the coral
3522 *Pocillopora verrucosa* from the Republic of Maldives. *Marine Biology* 118, 713-722.
- 3523 Smith, J.E., Hunter, C.L., Smith, C.M., 2010. The effects of top-down versus bottom-up control
3524 on benthic coral reef community structure. *Oecologia* 163, 497-507.
- 3525 Smith, S.R., 1992. Patterns of coral recruitment and post-settlement mortality on Bermuda's
3526 reefs: Comparisons to Caribbean and Pacific reefs. *American Zoologist* 32, 663-673.
- 3527 Smith, S.R., 1997. Patterns of coral settlement, recruitment and juvenile mortality with depth
3528 at Conch Reef, Florida. *Proceedings of the 8th International Coral Reef Symposium,*
3529 *Panama, 1197-1202.*
- 3530 Sneed, J.M., Sharp, K. H., Ritchie, K. B. & Paul, V. J. , 2014. The chemical cue
3531 tetrabromopyrrole from a biofilm bacterium induces settlement of multiple Caribbean
3532 corals. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 281, DOI: 10.1098/rspb.2013.3086.

- 3533 Sola, E., da Silva, I.M., Glassom, D., 2015. Spatio-temporal patterns of coral recruitment at
3534 Vamizi Island, Quirimbas Archipelago, Mozambique. *African Journal of Marine Science*
3535 37, 557-565.
- 3536 Sola, E., da Silva, I.M., Glassom, D., 2016. Reproductive synchrony in a diverse *Acropora*
3537 assemblage, Vamizi Island, Mozambique. *Mar. Ecol.* 37, 1373-1385.
- 3538 Sorek, M., Levy, O., 2014. Coral spawning behavior and timing. In: Numata, H., Helm, B.
3539 (Eds.), *Annual, Lunar, and Tidal Clocks: Patterns and Mechanisms of Nature's Enigmatic*
3540 *Rhythms*. Springer Japan, Tokyo, pp. 81-97.
- 3541 St Gelais, A.T., Chaves-Fonnegra, A., Moulding, A.L., Kosmynin, V.N., Gilliam, D.S., 2016a.
3542 *Siderastrea siderea* spawning and oocyte resorption at high latitude. *Invertebrate*
3543 *Reproduction & Development* 60, 212-222.
- 3544 St Gelais, A.T., Chaves-Fonnegra, A., Brownlee, A.S., Kosmynin, V.N., Moulding, A.L.,
3545 Gilliam, D.S., 2016b. Fecundity and sexual maturity of the coral *Siderastrea siderea* at
3546 high latitude along the Florida Reef Tract, USA. *Invertebrate Biology* 135, 46-57.
- 3547 Stake, J.L., Sammarco, P.W., 2003. Effects of pressure on swimming behavior in planula larvae
3548 of the coral *Porites astreoides* (Cnidaria, Scleractinia). *Journal of Experimental Marine*
3549 *Biology and Ecology* 288, 181-201.
- 3550 Steneck, R.S., 1982. A limpet-coraline alga association: Adaptations and defenses between a
3551 selective herbivore and its prey. *Ecology* 63, 507-522.
- 3552 Stoddart, J.A., 1983. Asexual reproduction of planulae in the coral *Pocillopora damicornis*.
3553 *Marine Biology* 76, 279-284.
- 3554 Strader, M.E., Davies, S.W., Matz, M.V., 2015. Differential responses of coral larvae to the
3555 colour of ambient light guide them to suitable settlement microhabitat. *Royal Society Open*
3556 *Science* 2, DOI: 10.1098/rsos.150358.
- 3557 Suzuki, G., Hayashibara, T., Shirayama, Y., Fukami, H., 2008. Evidence of species-specific
3558 habitat selectivity of *Acropora* corals based on identification of new recruits by two
3559 molecular markers. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 355, 149-159.
- 3560 Suzuki, G., Kai, S., Yamashita, H., Suzuki, K., Iehisa, Y., Hayashibara, T., 2011. Narrower
3561 grid structure of artificial reef enhances initial survival of *in situ* settled coral. *Marine*
3562 *Pollution Bulletin* 62, 2803-2812.
- 3563 Suzuki, Y., Takabayashi, T., Kawaguchi, T., Matsunaga, K., 1998. Isolation of an allelopathic
3564 substance from the crustose coralline algae, *Lithophyllum spp.*, and its effect on the brown
3565 alga, *Laminaria religiosa* Miyabe (Phaeophyta). *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology*
3566 *and Ecology* 225, 69-77.
- 3567 Sweeney, A.M., Boch, C.A., Johnsen, S., Morse, D.E., 2011. Twilight spectral dynamics and
3568 the coral reef invertebrate spawning response. *J Exp Biol* 214, 770-777.
- 3569 Szmant, A.M., Miller, M.W., 2006. Settlement preferences and post-settlement mortality of
3570 laboratory cultured and settled larvae of the Caribbean hermatypic corals *Montastraea*

- 3571 *faveolata* and *Acropora palmata* in the Florida Keys, USA. Proceedings of 10th
3572 International Coral Reef Symposium, Okinawa, 43-49.
- 3573 Szmant, A.M., Meadows, M.G., 2006. Developmental changes in coral larval buoyancy and
3574 vertical swimming behavior: Implications for dispersal and connectivity. Proceedings of
3575 10th International Coral Reef Symposium, Okinawa, 431-437.
- 3576 Tamelander, J., 2002. Coral recruitment following a mass mortality event. *Ambio* 31, 551-557.
- 3577 Tay, Y.C., Guest, J.R., Chou, L.M., Todd, P.A., 2011. Vertical distribution and settlement
3578 competencies in broadcast spawning coral larvae: Implications for dispersal models.
3579 *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 409, 324-330.
- 3580 Taylor, J.G., 1996. Seasonal occurrence, distribution and movements of the whale shark,
3581 *Rhincodon typus*, at Ningaloo Reef, Western Australia. *Marine and Freshwater Research*
3582 47, 637-642.
- 3583 Tebben, J., Guest, J.R., Sin, T.M., Steinberg, P.D., Harder, T., 2014. Corals like it waxed:
3584 Paraffin-based antifouling technology enhances coral spat survival. *PLoS One* 9, e87545.
- 3585 Tebben, J., Tapiolas, D.M., Motti, C.A., Abrego, D., Negri, A.P., Blackall, L.L., Steinberg,
3586 P.D., Harder, T., 2011. Induction of larval metamorphosis of the coral *Acropora millepora*
3587 by tetrabromopyrrole isolated from a *Pseudoalteromonas* bacterium. *PLoS One* 6, e19082.
- 3588 Tebben, J., Motti, C.A., Siboni, N., Tapiolas, D.M., Negri, A.P., Schupp, P.J., Kitamura, M.,
3589 Hatta, M., Steinberg, P.D., Harder, T., 2015. Chemical mediation of coral larval settlement
3590 by crustose coralline algae. *Scientific Reports* 5, 10803.
- 3591 Teo, A., Guest, J.R., Neo, M.L., Vicentuan, K., Todd, P.A., 2016. Quantification of coral sperm
3592 collected during a synchronous spawning event. *PeerJ* 2016, e2180.
- 3593 Tomascik, T., 1991. Settlement patterns of Caribbean scleractinian corals on artificial substrata
3594 along a eutrophication gradient, Barbados, West Indies. *Marine Ecology Progress Series*
3595 77, 261-269.
- 3596 Tomascik, T., Sander, F., 1987. Effects of eutrophication on reef-building corals. 3.
3597 Reproduction of the reef-building coral *Porites porites*. *Marine Biology* 94, 77-94.
- 3598 Toonen, R.J., Pawlik, J.R., 2001. Settlement of the gregarious tube worm *Hydroides dianthus*
3599 (Polychaeta: Serpulidae). II. Testing the desperate larva hypothesis. *Marine Ecology*
3600 *Progress Series* 224, 115-131.
- 3601 Tran, C.H., M., 2011. Larvae of *Pocillopora damicornis* (Anthozoa) settle and metamorphose
3602 in response to surface-biofilm bacteria. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 433, 85-96.
- 3603 Trenberth, K.E., 1999. Conceptual framework for changes of extremes of the hydrological
3604 cycle with climate change. *Climatic Change* 42, 327-339.
- 3605 True, J.D., 2012. Salinity as a structuring force for near shore coral communities, Proceedings
3606 of the 12th International Coral Reef Symposium, Cairns, Australia, pp. 7.

- 3607 Twan, W.H., Hwang, J.S., Lee, Y.H., Wu, H.F., Tung, Y.H., Chang, C.F., 2006. Hormones and
3608 reproduction in scleractinian corals. *Comparative Biochemistry and Physiology A -*
3609 *Molecular & Integrative Physiology* 144, 247-253.
- 3610 Underwood, A.J., 1997. *Experiments in Ecology: Their Logical Design and Interpretation*
3611 *using Analysis of Variance*. Cambridge University Press, United Kingdom.
- 3612 van der Merwe, R., Röthig, T., Voolstra, C.R., Ochsenkühn, M.A., Lattemann, S., Amy, G.A.,
3613 2014. High salinity tolerance of the Red Sea coral *Fungia granulosa* under desalination
3614 concentrate discharge conditions: An *in situ* photophysiology experiment. *Frontiers in*
3615 *Marine Science* 1, 1-8.
- 3616 van Hooidonk, R., Maynard, J., Tamelander, J., Gove, J., Ahmadi, G., Raymundo, L.,
3617 Williams, G., Heron, S.F., Planes, S., 2016. Local-scale projections of coral reef futures
3618 and implications of the Paris Agreement. *Scientific Reports* 6, DOI: 10.1038/srep39666.
- 3619 van Oppen, M.J.H., Olivera, J.K., Putnam, H.M., Gates, R.D., 2015. Building coral reef
3620 resilience through assisted evolution. *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences of*
3621 *the United States of America* 112, 2307–2313.
- 3622 van Woesik, R., 1995. Coral communities at high latitude are not pseudopopulations: Evidence
3623 of spawning at 32°N, Japan. *Coral Reefs* 14, 119-120.
- 3624 van Woesik, R., 2010. Calm before the spawn: Global coral spawning patterns are explained
3625 by regional wind fields. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 277, 715-722.
- 3626 van Woesik, R., Lacharmoise, F., Koksals, S., 2006. Annual cycles of solar insolation predict
3627 spawning times of Caribbean corals. *Ecol Lett* 9, 390-398.
- 3628 Vermeij, M., Dailer, M., Smith, C., 2011. Crustose coralline algae can suppress macroalgal
3629 growth and recruitment on Hawaiian coral reefs. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 422, 1-
3630 7.
- 3631 Vermeij, M.J., Sandin, S.A., 2008. Density-dependent settlement and mortality structure the
3632 earliest life phases of a coral population. *Ecology* 89, 1994-2004.
- 3633 Vermeij, M.J.A., 2006. Early life-history dynamics of Caribbean coral species on artificial
3634 substratum: The importance of competition, growth and variation in life-history strategy.
3635 *Coral Reefs* 25, 59-71.
- 3636 Vermeij, M.J.A., 2009. Floating corallites: A new ecophenotype in scleractinian corals. *Coral*
3637 *Reefs* 28, 987-987.
- 3638 Vermeij, M.J.A., Fogarty, N.D., Miller, M.W., 2006. Pelagic conditions affect larval behavior,
3639 survival, and settlement patterns in the Caribbean coral *Montastraea faveolata* *Marine*
3640 *Ecology Progress Series* 310, 119-128.
- 3641 Vermeij, M.J.A., Smith, J.E., Smith, C.M., Thurber, R.V., Sandin, S.A., 2009. Survival and
3642 settlement success of coral planulae: Independent and synergistic effects of macroalgae
3643 and microbes. *Oecologia* 159, 325–336.

- 3644 Vermeij, M.J.A., Marhaver, K.L., Huijbers, C.M., Nagelkerken, I., Simpson, S.D., 2010. Coral
3645 larvae move toward reef sounds. PLoS One 5, e10660.
- 3646 Veron, J.E.N., 1995. Corals in Space and Time. The Biogeography and Evolution of the
3647 Scleractinia. UNSW Press, Sydney, Australia.
- 3648 Veron, J.E.N., 2000. Corals of the World. Australian Institute of Marine Science, Townsville,
3649 Australia.
- 3650 Veron, J.E.N., Hoegh-Guldberg, O., Lenton, T.M., Lough, J.M., Obura, D.O., Pearce-Kelly,
3651 P., Sheppard, C.R.C., Spalding, M., Stafford-Smith, M.G., Rogers, A.D., 2009. The coral
3652 reef crisis: The critical importance of <350 ppm CO₂. Marine Pollution Bulletin 58, 1428-
3653 1436.
- 3654 Villanueva, R., Yap, H., Montaña, M., 2008. Timing of planulation by pocilloporid corals in
3655 the northwestern Philippines. Marine Ecology Progress Series 370, 111-119.
- 3656 Wallace, C.C., 1985. Reproduction, recruitment and fragmentation in nine sympatric species
3657 of the coral genus *Acropora*. Marine Biology 88, 217-233.
- 3658 Ward, S., 1992. Evidence for broadcast spawning as well as brooding in the scleractinian coral
3659 *Pocillopora damicornis*. Marine Biology 112, 641-646.
- 3660 Ward, S., Harrison, P., 2000. Changes in gametogenesis and fecundity of acroporid corals that
3661 were exposed to elevated nitrogen and phosphorus during the ENCORE experiment.
3662 Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology 246, 179-221.
- 3663 Webster, N.S., Smith, L.D., Heyward, A.J., Watts, J.E.M., Webb, R.I., Blackall, L.L., Negri,
3664 A.P., 2004. Metamorphosis of a scleractinian coral in response to microbial biofilms.
3665 Applied and Environmental Microbiology 70, 1213-1221.
- 3666 West, J.M., Salm, R.V., 2003. Resistance and resilience to coral bleaching: Implications for
3667 coral reef conservation and management. Conservation biology 17, 956-967.
- 3668 Westneat, M.W., Resing, J.M., 1988. Predation on coral spawn by planktivorous fish. Coral
3669 Reefs 7, 89-92.
- 3670 Whalan, S., Wahab, M.A., Sprungala, S., Poole, A.J., de Nys, R., 2015. Larval settlement: the
3671 role of surface topography for sessile coral reef invertebrates. PLoS One 10, e0117675.
- 3672 Wilkinson, C.R., 1999. Global and local threats to coral reef functioning and existence: Review
3673 and predictions. Mar. Freshw. Res. 50, 867-878.
- 3674 Willis, B.L., Babcock, R., Harrison, P., Wallace, C., 1997. Experimental hybridization and
3675 breeding incompatibilities within the mating systems of mass spawning corals. Coral Reefs
3676 16, 553-565.
- 3677 Wilson, J.R., Harrison, P.L., 1997. Sexual reproduction in high latitude coral communities at
3678 the Solitary Islands, Eastern Australia, Proceedings of 8th International Coral Reef
3679 Symposium, Panama, pp. 533-538.

- 3680 Wilson, J.R., Harrison, P.L., 2003. Spawning patterns of scleractinian corals at the Solitary
3681 Islands - a high latitude coral community in eastern Australia. *Marine Ecology Progress*
3682 *Series* 260, 115-123.
- 3683 Winkler, N.S., Pandolfi, J.M., Sampayo, E.M., 2015. *Symbiodinium* identity alters the
3684 temperature-dependent settlement behaviour of *Acropora millepora* coral larvae before the
3685 onset of symbiosis. *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 282, 20142260.
- 3686 Wolf, A.T., Nugues, M.M., 2012. Predation on coral settlers by the corallivorous fireworm
3687 *Hermodice carunculata*. *Coral Reefs* 32, 227-231.
- 3688 Woods, R.M., Baird, A.H., Mizerek, T.L., Madin, J.S., 2014. Environmental factors limiting
3689 fertilisation and larval success in corals. *Coral Reefs* 35, 1433-1440.
- 3690 Yamashita, H., Suzuki, G., Kai, S., Hayashibara, T., Koike, K., 2014. Establishment of coral-
3691 algal symbiosis requires attraction and selection. *PLoS One* 9, e97003.
- 3692 Zakai, D., Levy, O., Chadwick-Furman, N.E., 2000. Experimental fragmentation reduces
3693 sexual reproductive output by the reef-building coral *Pocillopora damicornis*. *Coral Reefs*
3694 19, 185-188.
- 3695

3696 **Appendix 1: Summary of peer-reviewed publications dealing with coral reproduction within the south western**
 3697 **Indian Ocean.**

Topic	Study location and site	Reference
Reproductive seasonality of <i>Pocillopora verrucosa</i>	South Africa , Maputaland	Kruger, Schleyer (1998)
Gametogenesis and larval brooding in <i>Anthelia glauca</i>	South Africa , Maputaland	(Kruger et al., 1998)
Reproductive seasonality of <i>Sarcophytum glauca</i>	South Africa , Maputaland	(Schleyer et al., 2004)
Reproductive seasonality of <i>Platygyra daedalea</i>	Kenya, Mombasa	(Mangubhai and Harrison, 2008)
Reproductive seasonality of <i>Echinopora gemmacea</i> and <i>Leptoria Phrygia</i>	Kenya, Mombasa	(Mangubhai, 2009)
Effect of heterotrophic feeding on the reproduction of <i>Pocillopora verrucosa</i>	South Africa, Vetch's pier	(Séré et al., 2010)
Sexual reproduction of <i>Pocillopora damiconis</i>	South Africa, Vetch's pier	(Massé et al., 2012)
<i>Ex situ</i> observations of spawning behaviour of <i>Platygyra daedalea</i>	South Africa, Maputaland	(Massé et al., 2013)
<i>In situ</i> observation of <i>Acropora</i> assemblage spawning	Madagascar, Andavadoaka	(Gress et al., 2014)
Reproductive seasonality and synchrony in <i>Acropora</i> assemblage	Mozambique, Vamizi Island	(Sola et al., 2016)
3698 <u>Size at first maturity of <i>Acropora austera</i> and <i>Platygyra daedalea</i></u>	South Africa, Maputaland	(Montoya-Maya et al., 2014)
3699		

3700 **Appendix 2: Summary of peer-reviewed publications dealing with coral recruitment within the south western**
 3701 **Indian Ocean.**

Topic	Study location and site	Reference
Temporal patterns of scleractinian recruitment	Tanzania, Zanzibar	(Franklin et al., 1998)
Effect of dynamite fishing on scleractinian recruitment	Tanzania, Taa Reef	(Nzali et al., 1998)
Scleractinian recruitment following 1998 bleaching	Kenya, Mombasa	(Tamelander, 2002)
Spatio-temporal dynamics of scleractinian recruitment	South Africa, Maputaland	(Glassom et al., 2006)
Spatio-temporal patterns of scleractinian recruitment	Kenya, Mombasa	(Mangubhai et al., 2007b)
Scleractinian and alcyonacea recruitment success	South Africa, Maputaland	(Schleyer et al., 2008)
Spatial variation in coral recruitment	Kenya, Mombasa	(O'Leary and Potts, 2011)
Indirect effect of fishing on coral recruitment	Kenya, multiple sites	(O'Leary et al., 2012)
Effect of fish and urchins on scleractinian coral recruitment	Kenya, multiple sites	(O'Leary et al., 2013)
Scleractinian recruitment on settlement tiles and the natural substratum	Seychelles, inner islands	(Chong-Seng et al., 2014)
Scleractinian recruitment on settlement tiles and the natural substratum at Vamizi Island	Mozambique, Vamizi Island	(Sola et al., 2015)
Effect of sediment on coral recruitment	Kenya, multiple sites	(Mwachireya et al., 2015)
Novel settlement tile design for <i>in situ</i> assessment of coral recruitment	South Africa, Maputaland	(Hart and Schleyer, 2016)
Update of scleractinian and alcyonacea recruitment success	South Africa, Maputaland	(Porter and Schleyer, 2017)

3703 **Appendix 3: A novel settlement tile design to facilitate the *in situ***
 3704 **detection of coral recruits.**

REEF ENCOUNTER

The News Journal of the International Society for Reef Studies
 Short Communications: Spawning of outplanted nursery-grown *Acropora*



spawning was observed. Two additional *A. cervicornis* genets showed gamete formation 19 months after out-planting (Carne et al. 2016 in review). Spawning times for both years (2015-2016) were around 20:50-21:20 hrs (Belize time) and spawning dates and times coincided with the spawning of wild acroporids at Carrie Bow Caye, Belize (N. Fogerty pers. comm).



Figure 2. Spawning in nursery reared, outplanted *Acropora cervicornis*. Photo Annelise Hagan.

Documenting these spawning events is an essential monitoring tool to illustrate the success of the use of *in situ* cultivation and outplanting of genetically diverse acroporid populations. In future work, the proximity of outplanted corals should be manipulated to investigate optimal spacing for successful larval production. Cultivation followed by outplanting is an effective management strategy to enhance endangered acroporid populations.

Acknowledgements

Documentation of the 2015-2016 spawning events was completed for the IDB's Coral Reef Restoration Program. The

work was also possible thanks to collaboration with the Belize Fisheries Department and Southern Environmental Association and with the assistance of vessels donated by the Moorings, Belize. Genotyping was performed by Meghann Devlin Durante in the Baums laboratory at the Pennsylvania State University.

References:

- Baums IB (2008) A restoration genetics guide for coral reef conservation. *Mol Ecol* 17:2796-2811
- Baums IB (2008) A restoration genetics guide for coral reef conservation. *Mol Ecol* 2008, 17:2796-2811.
- Baums IB, Devlin-Durante MK, Lajeunesse TC (2014) New insights into the dynamics between reef corals and their associated dinoflagellate endosymbionts from population genetic studies. *Mol Ecol* 23:4203-4215
- Bowden-Kerby A, Carne L (2012) Thermal tolerance as a factor in Caribbean *Acropora* restoration. *Proc 12th Int Coral Reef Symp* 1-5
- Carne L, Kaufman L, Scavo K (2016) Measuring success for Caribbean acroporid restoration: Key results from ten years of work in southern Belize. (ICRS Proceedings in review)
- Young CN, Schopmeyer SA, Lirman D (2012) A review of reef restoration and coral propagation using the threatened Genus *Acropora* in the Caribbean and Western Atlantic. *Bull Mar Sci Vol* 88:1075-1098

A novel settlement tile design to facilitate the *in situ* detection of coral recruits

Justin R. Hart^{1,2}, Michael H. Schleyer¹

¹Oceanographic Research Institute, PO Box 10712, Marine Parade, 4056 Durban, South Africa;
 email jhart@ori.org.za

Microhabitat of settlement surfaces is important for coral recruitment with surface structure and attachment technique shown to affect the suitability of surfaces for coral planulae settlement. Unglazed ceramic tiles have been widely used in coral recruitment studies (Doropoulos et al. 2014; Glassom et al. 2006; Harriott and Fisk, 1987). Surface irregularity influences the suitability of surfaces for settlement (Carleton & Sammarco 1987), with most recruitment occurring in micro-crevices on settlement tiles used in the field (Brandl & Bellwood 2016;

REEF ENCOUNTER

The News Journal of the International Society for Reef Studies
Short Communications: A novel settlement tile for coral recruits



Nozawa et al. 2011; Roeroe et al. 2009) and laboratory (Doropoulos et al. 2016; Petersen et al. 2005; Tebben et al. 2014; Whalan et al. 2015). Planulae settlement at low latitudes occurs predominantly on the under surface of raised settlement tiles (Maida et al. 1994; Mundy 2000) or on the surfaces between stacked tiles (Mundy 2000; O'Leary and Potts, 2011). At high latitudes more settlement occurs on the upper, exposed surfaces of tiles, presumably because light is a limiting factor (Harriott and Banks 1995).

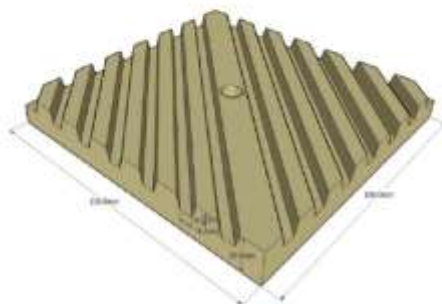


Figure 1. Oblique view of the grooved tile design.



Figure 2. Example of a coral recruit which has settled at the base of a tile groove.

Previously, coral settlement on a high-latitude reef in South Africa was found to occur predominantly on the vertical edges of horizontally attached ceramic tiles on which the horizontal top surface and vertical edges were exposed for coral settlement (Hart and Schleyer, submitted). This behaviour restricted the number of recruits which could be detected in situ with fluorescent photography. Here we describe a new customised tile design where the top surfaces have

been structured to enhance the availability of microhabitats suitable for coral settlement.

A tile prototype was machined from HDPE plastic to create inclined grooves 4 mm deep and 4.2 mm wide at the base (Fig. 1). The prototype was sandblasted to create a textured surface and used to make replicate box moulds with Mold Max 10 (Smooth-On Inc.) silicone rubber. This enabled the production of multiple tiles which were cast from polyurethane resin (AXSON Fastcast F16) with a silica sand filler (25 g Part A, 25 g Part B, 65 g silica sand per tile). Tiles were numerically engraved, using a sharp implement, before they were fully set in order to facilitate identification. Multiple moulds were used as the production rate of tiles must be rapid due to the short pot life (~5 mins) of the resin. The tiles were cured in flow-through sea water before use. The use of this new tile design resulted in an increase in the proportion of settlement that occurred on the top surface of tiles compared to the edges. The majority of recruits settled in the grooves (Hart and Schleyer submitted) (Fig. 2), which potentially provide refuge and preferential light conditions for coral recruits. This in turn increased the number of recruits that could be detected and monitored in situ. The tile design may also be of benefit in settlement research on other benthic marine organisms.

Acknowledgements

Funding was provided by the Applied Centre for Climate and Earth System Science (ACCESS) and the South African Association for Marine Biological Research (SAAMBR)

References

- Brandl SJ, Bellwood DR, (2016). Microtopographic refuges shape consumer-producer dynamics by mediating consumer functional diversity. *Oecologia*: 1-15
- Carleton JH, Sammarco PW, (1987). Effects of substratum irregularity on success of coral settlement: Quantification by comparative geomorphological techniques. *Bulletin of Marine Science* 40: 85-98
- Doropoulos C, Roff G, Bozec Y-M, Zupan M, Werminghausen J, Mumby PJ, (2016). Characterizing the ecological trade-offs throughout the early ontogeny of coral recruitment. *Ecological Monographs* 86: 20-44
- Doropoulos C, Roff G, Zupan M, Nestor V, Isechal AL, Mumby PJ, (2014). Reef-scale failure of coral settlement following typhoon disturbance and macroalgal bloom in Palau, Western Pacific. *Coral Reefs* 33: 613-623
- Glassom D, Celliers L, Schleyer MH, (2006). Coral recruitment patterns at Sodwana Bay, South Africa. *Coral Reefs* 25: 485-492

REEF ENCOUNTER

The News Journal of the International Society for Reef Studies
Short Communications: Bleaching at Secas Islands, Panama



- Harriott VJ, Banks SA, (1995). Recruitment of scleractinian corals in the Solitary Islands Marine Reserve, a high latitude coral dominated community in eastern Australia. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 123: 155–161
- Harriott VJ, Fisk DA, (1987). A comparison of settlement plate types for experiments on the recruitment of scleractinian corals. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 37: 201-208
- Maida M, Coll JC, Sammarco PW, (1994). Shedding new light on scleractinian coral recruitment. *Journal of Experimental Marine Biology and Ecology* 180: 189-202
- Mundy CN, (2000). An appraisal of methods used in coral recruitment studies. *Coral Reefs* 19: 124-131
- Nozawa Y, Tanaka K, Reimer JD, (2011). Reconsideration of the surface structure of settlement plates used in coral recruitment studies. *Zoological Studies* 50: 53-60
- O'Leary JK, Potts DC, (2011). Using hierarchical sampling to understand scales of spatial variation in early coral recruitment. *Coral Reefs* 30: 1013-1023
- Petersen D, Laterveer M, Schuhmacher H, (2005). Innovative substrate tiles to spatially control larval settlement in coral culture. *Marine Biology* 146: 937–942
- Roeroe KA, Yap M, Okamoto M, (2009). Development of a coastal environment assessment system using coral recruitment. *Fisheries Science* 75: 215–224
- Tebben J, Guest JR, Sin TM, Steinberg PD, Harder T, (2014). Corals like it waxed: paraffin-based antifouling technology enhances coral spat survival. *PLOS ONE* 9: e87545
- Whalan S, Wahab MA, Sprungala S, Poole AJ, de Nys R, (2015). Larval settlement: the role of surface topography for sessile coral reef invertebrates. *PLOS ONE* 10: e0117675

period of weeks, or is at 2°C above average summer peak temperature for one week, or at 1°C above normal for 2 weeks (Jokiel and Coles 1990; Sapp 1999; Rowher and Youle 2010), depending in part on previous exposure to increased temperatures. Increasing solar radiation also often exacerbates coral bleaching (Brown 2009). At a national meeting of US reef scientists in 1991 global warming was concluded not to be the main culprit causing coral bleaching (Sapp 1999); instead, with bleaching being observed mostly in El Niño years, changes in ocean temperature due to this phenomenon were then considered the



Figure 1. Map of Panama to show the locations of the Secas Islands, Playa Pargo and Coiba Island.

A Coral Bleaching Event at Secas Islands, Chiriqui Bay, Pacific Coast, Panama

Bill McGraw¹

Aquaculture and Environmental Scientist, Boquete, Panama;
www.newaquatechpanama.com; email
drbillmcgraw@investpanamanewshrimptechnology.com

Increasing sea surface temperatures have been established as the primary cause of coral bleaching (Brown 2009), with bleaching reported as occurring either when mean seasonal temperature increases by as little as 1°C above the normal seasonal average for a

more important. Subsequently, even with the significance of climate change becoming clear (Hoegh-Guldberg 1999; Veron et al. 2009), it is nevertheless in El Niño years that many regions are most prone to experience coral bleaching, among them the Pacific coast of Panama, where in the past elevated sea surface temperatures have generally occurred semi-regularly every 3-7 years.

With global annual mean temperatures continuing to rise, the El Niño beginning in 2015 has been one of the most intense on record (Eakin et al. 2016). In Panama warmer than usual water may have been present as early as April (2015), since the Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute in Panama City reported that corals on Coiba Island, on the Pacific coast, had started to fade at that time (Smithsonian Tropical Research Institute website). By August, in the same area, there

3707

VOLUME 31 NUMBER 2 December 2016

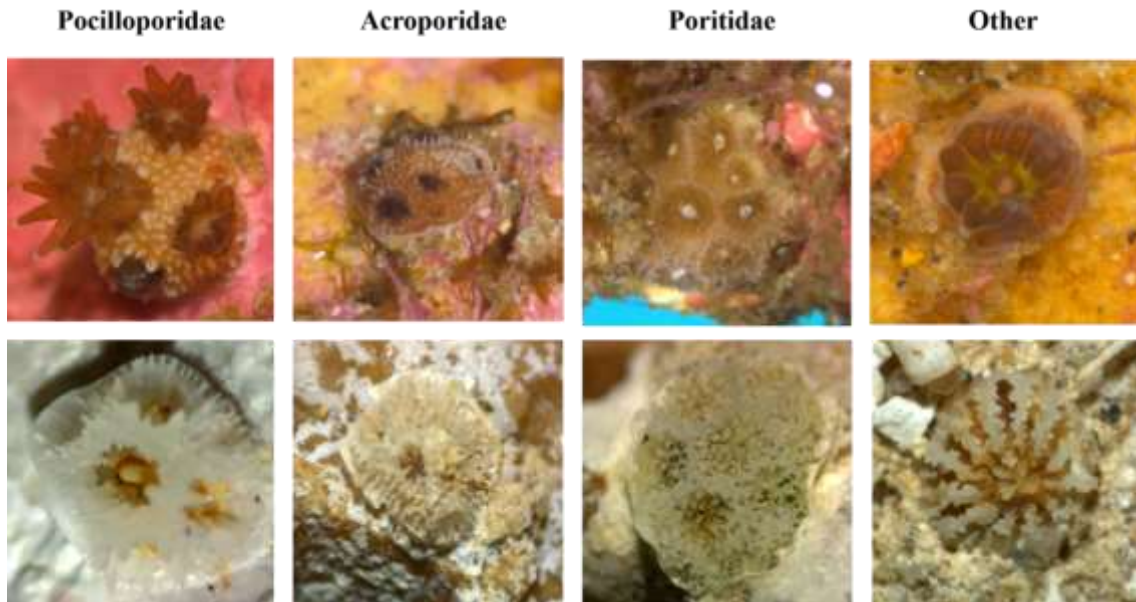
45 | Page

3708

3709

3710

3711 **Appendix 4: Representative pre-bleaching and post-bleaching images of**
3712 **coral recruits from the four taxonomic categories.**



3714